https://truckmanualshub.com/

OPERATOR'S MANUAL

Peterbilt

CLASS PAYS

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

348
337
330
325

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Contents

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Safety 1

Emergency 2

Controls 3

Driving 4

Maintenance 5

Information 6

Index 7

https://truckmanualshub.com/

©2017 PACCAR Inc - All Rights Reserved

This manual illustrates and describes the operation of features or equipment which may be either standard or optional on this vehicle. This manual may also include a description of features and equipment which are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any illustrations or descriptions relating to features or equipment which are not on this vehicle.

PACCAR reserves the right to discontinue, change specifications, or change the design of its vehicles at any time, without notice and without incurring any obligation.

The information contained in this manual is proprietary to PACCAR. Reproduction, in whole or in part, by any means is strictly prohibited without prior written authorization from PACCAR Inc.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

INTRODUCTION

How to Use This Manual 1-3
How to Find What You Want 1-3
Safety Alerts 1-4
Vehicle Safety 1-6
A Special Word About Repairs 1-8
Additional Sources of Information 1-9

CAB AND FRAME ACCESS

Safety 1-11
Door Lock and Keys. 1-12
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) 1-13
Climbing Onto the Deck Plate 1-14

GETTING TO YOUR ENGINE

Hood Hold Downs. 1-16
Hood Tilt. 1-17
Hood Safety Cable 1-18

https://truckmanualshub.com/

SEATS AND RESTRAINTS

Introduction 1-20
Safety Restraint Belts 1-21
Tether Belts 1-24
Komfort-Latch® Feature 1-25
During Pregnancy. 1-26
Belt Damage and Repair. 1-27
Safety Restraint Tips 1-27

START-UP

Introduction 1-29
Safe Vehicle Operation 1-29
Vehicle Loading. 1-30
Emergency Equipment 1-31
Driver's Check List 1-32

https://truckmanualshub.com/

INTRODUCTION

How to Use This Manual

This manual contains useful information for the safe and efficient operation of your Peterbilt vehicle. It also provides information on maintaining your vehicle in the best condition, with an outline for performing safety checks and basic preventive maintenance inspections.

We have tried to present the information you'll need to learn about your vehicle's functions, controls, and operation—and to present it as clearly as possible. We hope you'll find this manual easy to use.

There will be times when you need to take this manual out of your Peterbilt. When you do, please be sure to return it to the cab when you are finished using it. That way it will be there when you need it the next time or when you pass the vehicle on to the next user.

How to Find What You Want

There are several tools built into this manual to help you find what you need quickly and easily.

First is the **Quick Table of Contents**. Located at the front of the manual, this lists the main subjects covered and gives section numbers where you can find these subjects. Use the Quick Table of Contents to find information on a large subject like "Maintenance."

Cross-referenced citations also help you get the information you need. If some other part of the manual contains further information on the subject you are reading about, we'll indicate that in a cross-reference like this: (See Driver's Check List on page 1-32). You won't have to go searching for more information.

Finally you'll find a helpful **Subject Index**. It's in the back of the manual

https://truckmanualshub.com/

and alphabetically lists the subjects covered. So if you want information on brakes, for example, just look under Brake in the Subject Index. You'll find all the pages listed where brakes or braking are discussed.

Safety Alerts

Please read and follow all of the safety alerts contained in this manual. They are there for your protection and information. These alerts can help you avoid injury to yourself, your passengers, and help prevent costly damage to the vehicle. Safety alerts are highlighted by safety alert symbols and signal words such as "WARNING", "CAUTION", or "NOTE". Please do not ignore any of these alerts.

WARNING

⚠	**WARNING!**

The safety message following this symbol and signal word provides a warning against operating procedures which could cause death or personal injury. They could also cause equipment or property damage. The alert will identify the hazard, how to avoid it, and the probable consequence of not avoiding the hazard.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Example:

⚠ WARNING!
Do not carry additional fuel containers in your vehicle. Fuel containers, either full or empty, may leak, explode, and cause or feed a fire. Do not carry extra fuel containers. Even empty ones are dangerous. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

CAUTION

⚠ CAUTION

The safety alert following this symbol and signal word provides a caution against operating procedures which could cause equipment or property damage. The alert will identify the hazard, how to avoid it, and the probable consequence of not avoiding the hazard.

Example:

⚠ CAUTION
Continuing to operate your vehicle with insufficient oil pressure will cause serious engine damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

NOTE

i NOTE

The alert following this symbol and signal word provides important information that is not safety related but should be followed. The alert will highlight things that may not be obvious and is useful to your efficient operation of the vehicle.

Example:

i NOTE
Pumping the accelerator will not assist in starting the engine.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Vehicle Safety

WARNING!

Do not drink alcohol and drive. Your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious or even fatal accident, if you drive after drinking. Please do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Do not text and drive. Your reaction time, perceptions and judgment can be affected while texting or using any other form of mobile messaging while driving. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Make sure your vehicle is in top working condition before heading out on the road, it is the responsible driver's duty to do so. Inspect the vehicle according to the Driver's Check List beginning on page 1-32.

Every new vehicle is designed to conform to all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards applicable at the time of manufacture. Even with these safety features, continued safe and reliable operation depends greatly upon regular vehicle maintenance. Follow the maintenance recommendations found in Preventive Maintenance on page 5-9. This will help preserve your investment.

Keep in mind that even a well maintained vehicle must be operated within the range of its mechanical capabilities and the limits of its load ratings. See the Weight Ratings label on the driver's door edge.

Safe driving is only possible with the proper concentration on the driving task. Keep distraction to a minimum to improve your concentration. Examples of distractions may include radio controls, GPS navigation controls, cellular telephone calls, cellular text messages, reading or reaching for something on the floor. Minimizing your distractions will improve safe driving and will help avoid an accident involving death or personal injury.

Be aware of local regulations that may prohibit the use of cellular telephones while driving. In addition to being an unsafe practice, it may be against local or federal ordinances to use cellular devices while operating the vehicle.

This manual is not a training manual. It cannot tell you everything you need to know about driving your vehicle. For that you need a good training program or truck driving school. If you have not

https://truckmanualshub.com/

been trained, get the proper training before you drive. Only qualified drivers should drive this vehicle.

California Proposition 65 Warning

- Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.
- Other chemicals in this vehicle are also known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects or other reproductive harm.
- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Data Recorder

California Vehicle Code - Section 9951- Disclosure of Recording Device

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or more recording devices commonly referred to as "event data recorders (EDR)" or "sensing and diagnostic modules (SDM)". If you are involved in an accident, the device(s) may have the ability to record vehicle data that occurred just prior to and/or during the accident. For additional information on your rights associated with the use of this data, contact

- the California Department of Motor Vehicles - Licensing Operations Division
  – or –
- http://www.dmv.ca.gov/pubs/vctop/d03_6/vc9951.htm

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Environmental Protection

WARNING!

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm. Other chemicals in this vehicle are also known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects or other reproductive harm. This warning requirement is mandated by California law (Proposition 65) and does not result from any change in the manner in which vehicles are manufactured.

Some of the ingredients in engine oil, hydraulic oil, transmission and axle oil, engine coolant, diesel fuel, air conditioning refrigerant (R12, R134a, and PAG oil), batteries, etc., may contaminate the environment if spilled or not disposed of properly. Contact your local government agency for information concerning proper disposal.

A Special Word About Repairs

WARNING!

Do not attempt repair work without sufficient training, service manuals, and the proper tools. You could be killed or injured, or you could make your vehicle unsafe. Do only those tasks you are fully qualified to do.

Your dealer's service center is the best place to have your vehicle repaired. You can find dealers all over the country with the equipment and trained personnel to get you back on the road quickly—and keep you there.

Your vehicle is a complex machine. Anyone attempting repairs on it needs good mechanical training and the proper tools. If you are sure you have these requirements, then you can probably perform some repairs yourself. However, all warranty repairs

https://truckmanualshub.com/

must be performed by an authorized service facility. If you aren't an experienced mechanic, or don't have the right equipment, please leave all repairs to an authorized service facility. They are the ones equipped to do the job safely and correctly.

Maintenance Manuals. If you do decide to do any complex repair work, you'll need the maintenance manuals. Order them from your authorized dealer. Please provide your Chassis Serial Number when you order, to be sure you get the correct manuals for your vehicle. Allow about four weeks for delivery. There will be a charge for these manuals.

Final Chassis Bill of Material. A complete, non-illustrated computer printout listing of the parts used to custom-build your vehicle is available through the dealer from whom you purchased your vehicle.

WARNING!

Modifying your vehicle can make it unsafe. Some modifications can affect your vehicle's electrical system, stability, or other important functions. Before modifying your vehicle, check with your dealer to make sure it can be done safely. Improper modifications can cause death or personal injury.

Additional Sources of Information

Installed Equipment - Operator's Manuals

Major component suppliers also supply operation manuals specific to their products. Additional manuals and other pieces of literature are included in the glove box literature package. Look for information on products such as the engine, driver's seat, transmission, axles, wheels, tires, ABS/ESC (if applicable), radio, 5th wheel. If you are missing these pieces of literature, ask your Dealer for copies.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Other Sources

Another place to learn more about trucking is from local truck driving schools. Contact one near you to learn about courses they offer.

Federal and state agencies such as the department of licensing also have information. The Interstate Commerce Commission can give you information about regulations governing transportation across state lines.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

CAB AND FRAME ACCESS

Safety

WARNING!

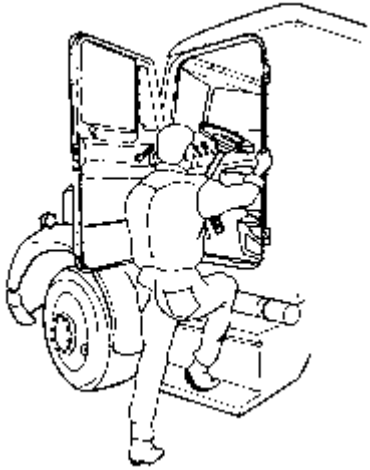
Always reinstall steps before entering the cab or accessing the deck plate. Without steps you could slip and fall. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

Be careful whenever you get into or out of your vehicle's cab. Always maintain at least three points of contact with your hands on the grab handles and your feet on the steps.

WARNING!

Jumping out of the cab or getting into the cab without proper caution is dangerous. You could slip and fall, which could lead to death or personal injury. Keep steps clean. Clean any fuel, oil, or grease off of the steps before entering the cab. Use the steps and grab handles provided, and always keep at least three points of contact between your hands and feet and the truck. Always face toward the vehicle when entering or exiting the cab and look where you are going.

The following picture shows the best way to enter and exit a Conventional Cab.



https://truckmanualshub.com/

Door Lock and Keys

Door Lock

Doors can be locked from the inside by using the lock button. Close the door then push the button down to lock. Doors automatically unlock when you open them from inside, and can be locked from the outside with the key or the optional remote keyless entry key fob.

WARNING!

To reduce the chance of death or personal injury, always lock the doors while driving. Along with using the lap shoulder belts properly, locking the doors helps prevent doors from inadvertently opening and occupants from being ejected from the vehicle.

To lock or unlock the doors from outside the cab, insert the key in the lock. Turn the key toward the rear to lock; forward to unlock.

Keys

The same key fits your ignition, doors, and sleeper luggage compartment.

Frame-mounted tool box locks and locking fuel tank caps each have individual keys.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) (Optional)

This vehicle may be equipped with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system that adds security and convenience to your vehicle. The system will lock or unlock the driver's door and passenger's door with the key fob and alert you with parking lights when the selected doors are locked or unlocked. The system includes two key fobs that provide secure rolling code technology that prevents someone from recording the entry signal.

NOTE

FCC ID: L2C0031T IC: 3432A-0031T FCC ID: L2C0032R IC: 3432A-0032R This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Operation

To Unlock The Driver's Door

Press the UNLOCK button once. The driver's door will unlock and the parking lights will come on for 40 seconds.

To Unlock The Passenger's Door

Press the UNLOCK button once and press again within 5 seconds. The passenger door will unlock.

To Lock All Doors

Press the LOCK button. The doors will lock and the parking lights will come on for 2 seconds. If the doors are open they will not lock. The range of the RKE system should be approximately 30 ft. This will be reduced if it is operated close to other RF sources such as TV/radio transmitters and cell towers.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Batteries

The key fob uses one CR2032, 3V battery. Batteries should last approximately three years, depending on use. Consistently reduced range is an indicator that the battery needs replacement. Batteries are available at most discount, hardware and drug stores.

The battery can be accessed by removing the cover of the key fob. After a new battery is installed, the key fob must be synchronized with the vehicle.

Synchronization

The key fob may need to be synchronized to the truck when the battery is replaced or when the key fob has not been used for an extended period of time.

To Synchronize A Key Fob

1. Hold the key fob near the receiver which is located behind the speedometer and tachometer.
2. Press and hold both the Lock and Unlock buttons at the same time for approximately 7 seconds.
3. When the key fob is resynchronized, the doors will lock then immediately unlock.
4. If the fob fails to synchronize, it could be programmed to a different truck or could have failed. Contact your dealer to re-program your key fob.

Climbing Onto the Deck Plate

WARNING!

When you are climbing onto and off the deck plate, maintain at least three points of contact with your hands on the grab handles and your feet on the steps. Always face toward the vehicle when entering or exiting the cab and look where you are going. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

WARNING!

When stepping onto a surface to enter the cab or access the deck plate, only use the steps and grab handles installed and designed for that purpose. Failure to use the proper steps and grabhandles could cause a fall which may result in death or personal injury.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Keep steps clean. Clean any fuel, oil, or grease off the steps before entering the cab or accessing the deck plate. Stepping on a slippery surface can cause a fall which may result in death or personal injury.

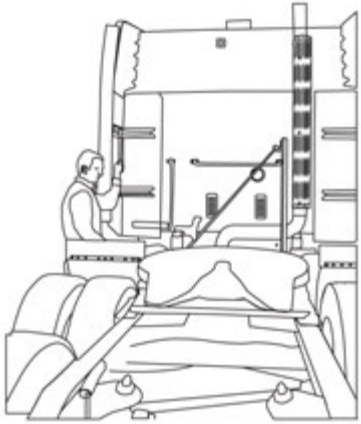
WARNING!

Always reinstall steps before entering the cab or accessing the deck plate. Without steps you could slip and fall. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

NOTE

Any alteration (adding bulkheads, headache racks, tool boxes, etc.) behind the cab that affects the utilization of installed grab handles, deck plates, or frame access steps should comply with Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulation 399.

The following pictures show you the right way to get on and off the area behind your cab.



Hold handles as you step up.

Maintain three points of contact.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

GETTING TO YOUR ENGINE

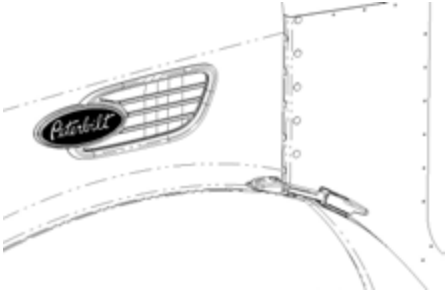
Hood Hold Downs

The hood is secured in its closed position by an external latch on each side. These latches serve as hold downs and keep the hood from opening unexpectedly.

CAUTION
If you do not latch the hood securely, it could open during operation and cause vehicle damage. Be sure to latch the hood securely before moving the vehicle.

To open the hood, unlatch both of the hood hold downs.

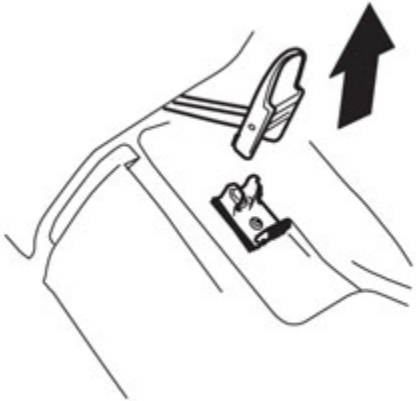
1. Hood Latch in the Closed Position



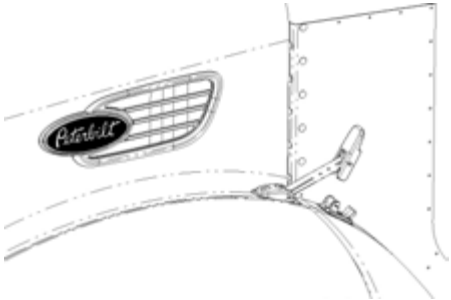
2. Pull Latch to Open

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3. Pull Up to Separate



4. Hood Latch in the Open Position



Hood Tilt

WARNING!

A pivoting hood could hurt someone or be damaged itself. Before opening or closing the hood, be sure there are no people or objects in the way. Failure to stand in a position of safety can cause death or personal injury.

WARNING!

Before opening the hood, make sure your footing is secure and stable. Failure to do so may cause the hood to close uncontrollably which may result in death or personal injury.

Put one hand on the hood handle (just above the Peterbilt emblem), one foot on the bumper, and one foot on the ground. Tilt the hood forward.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Pull with hand from here

Locate the hood safety cable as shown in the following section and attach it to the hook on the hood.

To close the hood, you must first detach the hood safety cable from the hook on the hood.

WARNING!

Before closing the hood, be sure the area is clear—no people or objects are in the way. Failure to do so may result in death or personal injury.

CAUTION

To avoid hood damage when closing the hood, detach the safety cable from the hook on the hood before closing the hood.

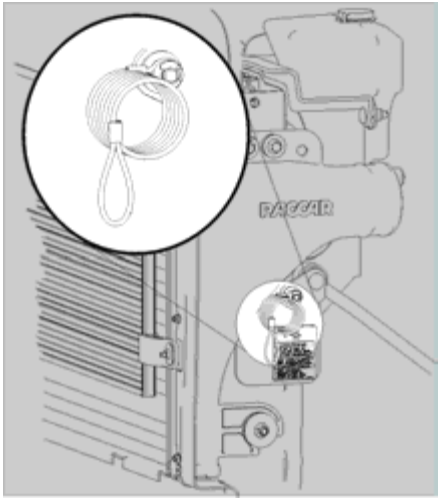
Hood Safety Cable

The hood is equipped with a hood safety cable. The cable is on the driver's side of the radiator. Unwind the cable by pulling on it and attach the loop of the cable to the hook on the hood.

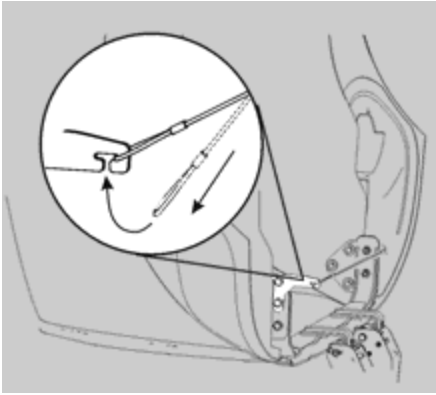
WARNING!

Always attach the hood safety cable to keep a hood open any time anyone gets under a hood for any reason. Failure to do so may allow the hood to fall unexpectedly resulting in death or personal injury.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Safety cable in its stored position



Safety cable in its attached position

https://truckmanualshub.com/

SEATS AND RESTRAINTS

Introduction

This section covers the operation and safe use of your seats. For further information on features and adjustment of the seat, see the manufacturer's Service and Operation Manual included with the vehicle.

Seat Adjustment

WARNING!

Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could move suddenly and unexpectedly and can cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Make all adjustments to the seat while the vehicle is stopped. After adjusting the seat and before driving off, always check to ensure that the seat is firmly latched in position. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury or property damage.

WARNING!

Before driving or riding in vehicle, ensure that there is adequate head clearance at maximum upward travel of seat. Injury may occur if head clearance is not adequate. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

Standard Driver's Seat

The standard driver's seat can be adjusted forward and rearward. These movements are each controlled by levers located on the FRONT of the seat.

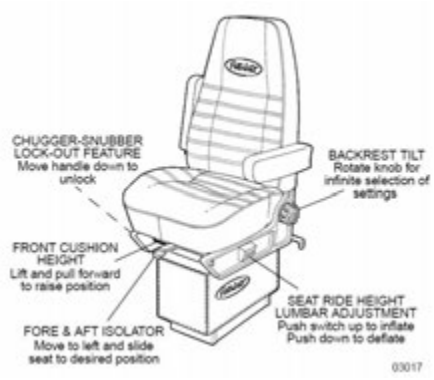
Driver's Seat with Air Suspension (Option)

WARNING!

Before driving or riding in the vehicle, be sure that there is adequate head clearance at maximum upward travel of seat. Serious injury may occur if head clearance is not adequate.

The driver's seat with air suspension can be adjusted using the controls pictured.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Safety Restraint Belts

Safety belts have proven to be the single most effective means available for reducing the potential for either death or personal injury in motor vehicle accidents. Unbelted riders could be thrown into the windshield or other parts of the cab or could be thrown out of the cab. They could strike another person. Injuries can be much worse when riders are unbelted. Always fasten your seat belt and be sure anyone riding with you does the same. Therefore, read the following instructions and always observe user warnings pertaining to safety belts.

WARNING!

Do not drive vehicle without your seat belt and your riders belts fastened. Riding without a safety belt properly fastened can lead to death or personal injury in an emergency.

WARNING!

In vehicles equipped with passenger seat swivel function, the seat belts will only perform their intended function when the seat is facing forward. Failure to comply can lead to death or personal injury in an emergency.

Your vehicle is equipped with a seat belt indicator in the warning light display

https://truckmanualshub.com/

above the speedometer/tachometer (see "Seat Belt, Fasten" on page 3-23).

Lap/Shoulder Belt

The combination lap-shoulder belt is equipped with a locking mechanism. The system adjusts automatically to a person's size and movements as long as the pull on the belt is slow.

Hard braking or a collision locks the belt. The belt will also lock when driving up or down a steep hill or in a sharp curve.

To fasten the belt:

1. Grasp the belt tongue.
2. Pull belt in a continuous slow motion across your chest and lap.
3. Insert belt tongue into buckle on inboard side of seat.
4. Push down until the tongue is securely locked with an audible click.
5. Pull belt to check for proper fastening and adjustment, as follows:

- Pull shoulder section to make sure belt fits snugly across the chest and pelvis.
- There should be less than 1 inch (25 mm) gap between the body and the belt.
- The shoulder belt must be positioned over the shoulder, it must never rest against the neck or be worn under the arm.
- Make sure any slack is wound up on the retractor and that the belt is not twisted.

To unfasten the belt:

1. Push in the release button on the buckle.
2. The belt will spring out of the buckle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

If the belt is locked, lean the body back to remove any tension in the belt. After releasing the belt, allow the belt to retract completely by guiding the belt tongue until the belt comes to a stop.

Safety Restraint Belts

Lap Belt

Correct

Incorrect (too high on hips)

Shoulder Belt

Correct (over arm)

Incorrect (under arm)

Incorrect (twisted)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Proper seat belt adjustment and use is important to maximize occupant safety. Failure to wear or adjust the safety belt properly may result in death or personal injury.

Tether Belts

This vehicle may have an external tether belt installed with a seat, instead of the internal tethering device. Tether belts are designed to restrain the seat in the event of a sudden stop or an accident.

Internal tether belts do not require adjustment.

WARNING!

Do not remove, modify, or replace the tether belt system with a different tether system. A failed or missing tether belt could allow the seat base to fully extend in the event of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

WARNING!

Failure to adjust tether belts properly can cause excessive movement of the seat in an accident. Tether belts should be adjusted so that they are taut when the seat is in its most upward and forward position. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

To adjust an external tether belt

- Make sure that the tether belt is attached to the cab floor and seat frame. It should be routed through the buckle on each side.
- Often the attachments are made using a split-type hook. Make sure both halves of the hook are around the anchor bracket.
- To lengthen the tether, turn the buckle to a right angle to the webbing. Then pull the buckle. To shorten the tether, pull on the strap.

Komfort-Latch® Feature

Your vehicle includes a feature designed to eliminate cinching and provide improved safety and comfort. Cinching is the condition where a belt becomes continually tighter around you during a rough, bouncy ride. The need for this feature increases with rough road conditions, particularly over long distances.

To eliminate cinching, simply activate the Komfort-Latch feature located on the seat belt webbing at the appropriate time.

1. Adjust the seat to its proper driving position.
2. Latch the seat belt.
3. If available, adjust the seat belt height adjuster to a comfortable driving position.
4. While seated appropriately, push the "on" button to engage the Komfort Latch.
5. Learn forward in the seat until you hear a "click."
6. Return to normal driving position, and the Komfort Latch maintains the preset amount of tension relief.

To disengage the mechanism:

1. Unbuckle the seat belt
2. Press the "OFF" button of the Komfort Latch or tug on the shoulder strap.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Komfort-Latch®

More information and video tutorials can be found at: www.clicktugsnug.com.

WARNING!

Do not set the Komfort Latch with too much slack. Too much slack may reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

During Pregnancy

Pregnant women should always wear combination lap/shoulder belts. The lap belt portion must be worn snugly and as low as possible across the pelvis. To avoid pressure on the abdomen, the belt must never pass over the waist. A properly worn seat belt may significantly reduce the risks to woman and baby in the event of a crash.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Pregnant Woman with Belt Properly Worn

Belt Damage and Repair

Damaged belts in the cab must be replaced. Belts that have been stretched, cut, or worn out may not protect you in an accident.

If any seat belt is not working properly, see an Authorized Service Center for repair or replacement.

For further information on seat belts and seat belt maintenance, see Safety Restraint System - Inspection on page 5-75.

Safety Restraint Tips

- Do not wear a belt over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury in an accident.
- Any authorized person sleeping in your vehicle while it is moving should use the bunk restraint.
- Any authorized person sitting in the sleeper area on the sofa bed (if equipped) while it is moving should wear a seat belt.
- A responsible operator sees to it that everyone in the vehicle rides or sleeps safely. The operator is responsible to inform any passengers or co-drivers how to properly use the seat belts and bunk restraint in the vehicle.
- Do not strap in more than one person with each belt.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Keep seat belt and bunk restraint buckles free of any obstruction that may prevent secure locking.
- Damaged or worn belts in the cab or sleeper, subjected to excessive stretch forces from normal wear, must be replaced. They may not protect you if you have an accident.
- Any belts or restraints that have been subjected to an accident should be inspected for any loose (attaching) hardware or damaged buckles.
- If belts show damage to any part of assembly, such as webbing, bindings, buckles or retractors, they must be replaced.
- Do not allow safety belts (seat or bunk) to become damaged by getting caught in door, bunk or seat hardware, or rubbing against sharp objects.
- All belts must be kept clean or the retractors may not work properly.
- Never bleach or dye seat or bunk restraint belts: chemicals can weaken them. Do, however, keep them clean by following the care label on the belts. Let them dry completely before allowing them to retract or be stowed away.
- Make sure the seat belts and bunk restraint of the unoccupied passenger seat or bunk is fully wound up on its retractor or is stowed, so that the belt or restraint tongue is in its properly stowed position. This reduces the possibility of the tongue becoming a striking object in case of a sudden stop.
- Do not modify or disassemble the seat belts or bunk restraint in your vehicle. They will not be available to keep you and your passengers safe.
- If any seat belt or bunk restraint is not working properly, see an authorized dealer for repair or replacement.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

START-UP

Introduction

The following section covers start-up procedures for getting your vehicle ready for the road.

Safe Vehicle Operation

For your safety, as well as those around you, be a responsible driver:

- If you drink alcohol, do not drive.
- Do not drive if you are tired, ill, or under emotional stress.

Safe driving is only possible with the proper concentration on the driving task. Keep distraction to a minimum to improve your concentration. Examples of distractions may include radio controls, GPS navigation controls, cellular telephone calls, cellular text messages, reading or reaching for something on the floor. Minimizing your distractions will improve safe driving and will help avoid an accident involving death or personal injury.

Be aware of local regulations that may prohibit the use of cellular telephones while driving. In addition to being an unsafe practice, it may be against local or federal ordinances to use cellular devices while operating the vehicle.

Much has gone into the manufacturing of your vehicle including advanced engineering techniques, rigid quality control, and demanding inspections. These manufacturing processes will be enhanced by you, the safe driver, who observes the following:

- Knows and understands how to operate the vehicle and all its controls.
- Maintains the vehicle properly.
- Uses driving skills wisely.

For more information, refer to Department of Transportation Regulation 392.7, which states that interstate commercial motor vehicles are not to be driven unless the driver is sure that certain parts and accessories are in working order.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

The use of alcohol, drugs, and certain medications will seriously impair perception, reactions, and driving ability. These circumstances can substantially increase the risk of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Do not drink alcohol and drive. Your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious or even fatal accident, if you drive after drinking. Please do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking.

WARNING!

Do not text and drive. Your reaction time, perceptions and judgment can be affected while texting or using any other form of mobile messaging while driving. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Vehicle Loading

Compare your vehicle's load capacity with the total load you are carrying. If adjustments need to be made, make them, do not drive an overloaded vehicle. If you are overloaded or your load has shifted, your vehicle may be unsafe to drive.

WARNING!

Do not exceed the specified load rating. Overloading can result in loss of vehicle control, either by causing component failures or by affecting vehicle handling. Exceeding load ratings can also shorten the service life of the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

The gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR), or the maximum front and rear gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) are determined by the

https://truckmanualshub.com/

components installed from the factory on to the vehicle and their designed specifications. (Axle weight ratings are listed on the driver's door edge.)

The following are some definitions of weight you should know:

GVWR: is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. This is the MAXIMUM WEIGHT your vehicle is allowed to carry, including the weight of the empty vehicle, loading platform, occupants, fuel, and any load. Never exceed the GVWR of your vehicle.

GCW: is the actual combined weight, or Gross Combination Weight (GCW), of your vehicle and its load: vehicle, plus trailer(s), plus cargo.

GAWR: is the Gross Axle Weight Rating. This is the total weight that one axle is designed to transmit to the ground. You will find this number listed on the driver's door edge.

Load Distribution: be sure any load you carry is distributed so that no axle has to support more than its GAWR.

WARNING!

An unevenly distributed load or a load too heavy over one axle can affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, which could result in an accident. Even if your load is under the legal limits, be sure it is distributed evenly. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Emergency Equipment

It is good practice to carry an emergency equipment kit in your vehicle. One day, if you have a roadside emergency, you will be glad the following items are with you:

- window scraper
- snow brush
- container or bag of sand or salt
- emergency light
- warning triangles
- small shovel
- first aid kit
- fire extinguisher
- vehicle recovery hitches (see Vehicle Recovery Guidelines on page 2-12 for details).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Driver's Check List

To keep your vehicle in top shape and maintain a high level of safety for you, your passengers, and your load, make a thorough inspection every day before you drive. You will save maintenance time later, and the safety checks could help prevent a serious accident. Please remember, too, that Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulation 392.7 requires a pre-trip inspection and so do commercial trucking companies.

You are not expected to become a professional mechanic. The purpose of your inspections is to find anything that might interfere with the safe and efficient transportation of yourself, any passengers, and your load. If you do find something wrong and cannot fix it yourself, have an authorized dealer or qualified mechanic repair your vehicle right away.

The following operations are to be performed by the driver. Performing these checks and following the maintenance procedures in this manual will help keep your vehicle running properly.

Approaching Your Vehicle

- Check the overall appearance and condition. Are windows, mirrors, and lights clean and unobstructed?
- Check beneath the vehicle. Are there signs of fuel, oil, or water leaks?
- Check for damaged, loose, or missing parts. Are there parts showing signs of excessive wear or lack of lubrication? Have a qualified mechanic examine any questionable items and repair them without delay.
- Check your load. Is it secured properly?

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Daily Checks

Engine Compartment Checks - Daily

1. Engine Fluid Levels - add more if necessary.
   a. Engine oil
   b. Coolant (check while engine is cold)
   c. Power steering fluid level
2. Engine Belt - check tension and condition of belts.
   a. See Accessory Drive Belts on page 5-102 for further information on checking belt tension.

NOTE
Deflection should be one belt thickness for each foot distance between the pulley centers.

   b. Replace belts that are cracked torn or broken.
3. Fuel Filter/Water Separator Draining - check and drain. Depending on the fuel storage facility, more frequent draining may be required.
4. Windshield washer reservoir fluid level - fill if necessary.
5. Battery Cables - check the condition of the battery and alternator cables for signs of chafing or rubbing. Make sure that all clamps (straps) holding the cables are present and in good working order.
6. Hood closed before entering cab. Is it latched properly?
7. Check brake lines and hoses.
8. Check the steering components (pitman arm, draglink, power steering hoses, etc.).

Chassis and Cab Checks - Daily

Before entering the cab and operating the vehicle, check the following equipment for proper maintenance:

1. Lights - are any exterior lights cracked or damaged?
2. Windows and Mirrors - are they clean and adjusted properly?
3. Tires and Wheels - are they inflated properly? Are all wheel cap nuts in place and torqued properly - tighten if necessary. Check front wheel bearing oil levels. Inspect all tires and wheels for damage - correct if found.
4. Suspension - check for loose or missing fasteners. Check damage to springs or other suspension parts such as cracks, gouges, distortions, bulges or chafing.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5. Brake Components - check lines, linkages, chambers, parking and service brake operation.
6. If your truck has hydraulic brakes, check:
   - the brake system for leaks
   - hydraulic lines for cracks or kinks
   - calipers for leaks
7. Air System - are there leaks?
   Air Tanks - drain water from all air tanks. Make sure the drain cocks are closed. This procedure is also required for air suspension tanks equipped with automatic drain valves.
   For further details See Using the Brake System on page 4-24.
8. Steps and Handholds - check for worn surfaces and loose or missing fasteners (which includes any fuel tank steps).
9. Fluid Tanks (Fuel, DEF, etc.) - check underneath the vehicle for signs of fluid leaks. If any are found, correct before operating the vehicle.
10. Fuel Tank Hardware - are the tanks fill caps secure? Are the tank straps tight? Is the strap webbing in place?

WARNING!

Diesel fuel in the presence of an ignition source (such as a cigarette) could cause an explosion. Do not remove a fuel tank cap near an open flame. Use only the fuel and/or additives recommended for your engine. A mixture of gasoline or alcohol with diesel fuel increases this risk of explosion. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage. See Refueling on page 4-67, for more information.

11. Trailer Connections - are they secure and the lines clear? If they are not being used, are they stored properly?
    a. Is the trailer spare wheel secure and inflated?
    b. Is the landing gear up and the handle secured?
12. Check the fifth wheel. Is the kingpin locked?
    a. Is the sliding fifth wheel locked?

Cab Interior - Daily

1. Seat - adjust the seat for easy reach of controls and visibility.
2. Seat Belts - fasten and adjust safety restraint belts (which may include restraints in the sleeper).
3. Steering Column - adjust for easy reach and visibility.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

4. Mirrors - check and readjust mirrors if necessary.
5. Lights - turn ignition key to the ON position and check for warning lights and buzzer. Check operation of turn signals and emergency lights.
6. Instruments - check all instruments.
7. Windshield - check operation of windshield wipers and washers.
8. Horn - check operation of horn.
9. Fuel - check fuel. Is there enough fuel?
10. Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) - check level. Is there enough fluid?
11. Sleeper air conditioning air filter - check the condition of the sleeper air conditioning air filter. Keep the sleeper floor area behind the passenger front seat clear of debris and pet hair. The sleeper air conditioner draws air from this area and excessive dirt or pet hair may shorten the service life of the sleeper air conditioning air filter.

The above items should be checked daily, as a minimum. They are in addition to, not in place of, Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations. These regulations may be purchased by writing to:

Superintendent of Documents

U.S. Government Printing Office

Washington, DC 20402

Weekly Operations

1. Battery - check battery and terminals.
2. Wheel Cap Nuts - are they all in place and torqued properly - tighten if necessary. See Wheel Cap Nut Torque on page 5-149.
3. Other Controls and Wiring - check for condition and adjustment.
4. Steering Components - check pitman arm, draglink, and power steering hoses, etc., for loose, broken, or missing parts.
5. HVAC Fresh Air Filter - check for condition and cleanliness.
6. Other Engine Compartment Checks
   a. Check condition and fastening of engine belt, hoses, clamps, and radiator.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

b. Check the air cleaner, muffler, and exhaust pipes. Are they tight and secure?

c. Automatic transmission fluid (when applicable) - Check level, after the engine has warmed up to operating temperature.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WHAT TO DO IF...

You Need Roadside Assistance 2-3
Low Air Alarm Turns On 2-3
Stop Engine Lamp Turns On 2-4
Engine Oil Pressure Lamp Turns On. 2-4
Engine is Overheating 2-5
Fuse or Relay Blows 2-6

JUMP STARTING VEHICLES

Introduction 2-8

VEHICLE RECOVERY AND SPRING BRAKES

Vehicle Recovery Guidelines 2-12
Returning Vehicle to Service 2-20
Spring Brakes—Manual Release 2-20
Sand, Mud, Snow and Ice 2-22
Towing the Vehicle 2-23

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WHAT TO DO IF...

You Need Roadside Assistance

Call toll-FREE 1-800-4-PETERBILT (1-800-473-8372) to talk to someone at the PACCAR Customer Center.

- Open 24-7-365 days a year
- They can help you get roadside assistance.
- They have a custom mapping system which locates Peterbilt dealers and Independent Service Providers (ISPs) near you and lists types of services offered, hours of operation and contact information.
- They can assist with jump and pull starts, tires, trailers, fines and permits, chains, towing, hazardous clean-up, out of fuel (roadside), mechanical repairs and preventive maintenance services.
- They have bilingual agents and access to a translation service to ensure quality assistance for customers who speak any language.
- They can't answer your warranty questions but can get you in contact with a Peterbilt dealer who can.
- The PACCAR Customer Center service is FREE even if you don't drive a Peterbilt.

Low Air Alarm Turns On

1. Slow down carefully.
2. Move a safe distance off the road and stop.
3. Place the transmission in neutral (park with automatic transmissions, if equipped) and set the parking brake. (Refer to Parking Brake Valve on page 4-43 and Operating the Transmission on page 4-22, for transmission shifting and parking brake information.)
4. Turn OFF the engine.
5. Turn ON the emergency flasher and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

If the air pressure falls below 60 psi (414 kPa) the spring brakes may stop the vehicle abruptly, which could cause an accident resulting in death or personal injury. Observe the red warning lamps on the gauges. If one comes on, do not continue to drive the vehicle until it has been properly repaired or serviced.

If the light and alarm do not turn off at startup, do not try to drive the vehicle until the problem is found and fixed. (Refer to Using the Brake System on page 4-24, for more brake information.)

Stop Engine Lamp Turns On

Stop Engine Lamp - If the Stop Engine warning lamp illuminates, it means you have a serious engine system problem.

WARNING!

This should be considered an emergency. You should stop the vehicle as safely as possible and turn OFF the ignition. The vehicle must be serviced and the problem corrected before driving again. Failure to do so may cause severe engine or DPF damage, or cause an accident which may result in death or personal injury.

Engine Oil Pressure Lamp Turns On

Engine Oil Pressure Lamp - If the oil pressure suddenly drops, or the audible alarm and engine oil pressure warning light come on while driving, do the following:

1. Slow down carefully.
2. Move a safe distance off the road and stop.
3. Place the transmission in park and set the parking brake. (See Parking Brake Valve on page 4-43 and Operating the Transmission on page 4-22, for transmission shifting and parking brake information.)
4. Turn OFF the engine.
5. Turn ON the emergency flasher and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6. Wait a few minutes to allow oil to drain into the engine oil pan, and then check the oil level. (See Oil Level Check on page 5-100, for details on checking oil level.)
7. Add oil if necessary. If the problem persists, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

CAUTION
Continuing to operate your vehicle with insufficient oil pressure may cause severe engine damage or cause an accident which may result in equipment or property damage.

It is important to maintain oil pressure within acceptable limits. If oil pressure drops below the minimum psi (kPa) a Red Warning Lamp on the oil pressure gauge will illuminate and the Stop Engine Lamp will come ON.

Engine is Overheating

The cooling system may overheat if the coolant level is below normal or if there is sudden loss of coolant, such as a split hose. The system may also temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions such as:

- Climbing a long hill on a hot day
- Stopping after high-speed driving

If either one of the above occurs, **DO NOT TURN OFF THE ENGINE** unless: **a**) the Low Water warning device indicates a loss of coolant, **b**) the Red Warning lamp (on the gauge) and Check Engine lamp comes ON, **c**) the Buzzer sounds showing an overheat condition, or **d**) if you have any other reason to suspect the engine may be overheating - follow these steps.

1. Reduce engine speed and stop. When stopped, place the transmission in Neutral and set the parking brake. (See Parking Brake Valve on page 4-43 and Putting the Vehicle in Motion on page 4-19, for transmission shifting and parking brake information.) Keep the engine running.
2. Check to ensure the Oil Pressure Gauge reads normal.
3. Make sure the engine fan is turning by switching the Engine Fan Switch from AUTO to MAN (Manual).
4. Increase the engine speed to about one-half of full operating speed, or 1,100 to 1,200 rpm, maximum.
5. Return the engine speed to normal idle after 2 or 3 minutes.
6. Monitor the engine temperature. After the temperature returns to normal, allow the engine to idle 3 to 5 minutes before shutting it

https://truckmanualshub.com/

off. This allows the engine to cool gradually and uniformly.

7. If overheating came from severe operating conditions, the temperature should have cooled by this time. If it has not, stop the engine and let it cool before checking to see if the coolant is low.

For further information on engine temperature and operating engines properly, see the Engine Operation and Maintenance Manual and Starting & Operating the Vehicle on page 4-5. Check the coolant level after each trip when the engine has cooled. The coolant level should be visible within the surge tank—add coolant if necessary. See Topping Off in Engine Cooling System on page 5-80, for instructions on checking and filling the coolant expansion tank.

WARNING!

To reduce the chance of death, personal injury and/or vehicle damage from overheated engines, which can result in a fire, never leave the engine idling without an alert driver present. If the engine should overheat, as indicated by the engine coolant temperature light, immediate action is required to correct the condition. Continued unattended operation of the engine, even for a short time, may result in serious engine damage or a fire.

WARNING!

Do not remove the radiator fill cap while the engine is hot. Scalding steam and fluid under pressure may escape. You could be badly burned. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

Fuse or Relay Blows

Fuses are located behind the drivers side kick panel, below the ignition switch, and accessible by a door panel. See Fuse Panel on page 5-88.

WARNING!

Do not replace a fuse with a fuse of a higher rating. Doing so may damage the electrical system and cause a fire. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Before replacing a fuse, turn OFF all lights and accessories and remove the ignition key to avoid damaging the electrical system.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

CAUTION

Never patch fuses with tin foil or wire. This may cause serious damage elsewhere in the electrical circuit, and it may cause a fire.

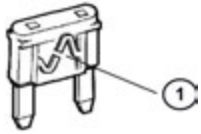
CAUTION

If a circuit keeps blowing fuses, have the electrical system inspected for a short circuit or overload by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Failure to do so could cause serious damage to the electrical system and/or vehicle.

Fuse Inspection and Replacement

All the electrical circuits have fuses to protect them from a short circuit or overload. If something electrical on your chassis stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse.

1. Turn OFF all lights and accessories and remove the ignition key to avoid damaging the electrical system.
2. Determine from the chart on the fuse panel which fuse controls that component.
3. Remove that fuse and see if it is blown.



1 Blown

If it is blown, replace it with a fuse of the same rating.

If a fuse of the same rating is not available, a fuse of a lower rating may be temporarily substituted. You can also use a fuse from a circuit you can do temporarily without (for example an accessory circuit or radio).

CAUTION

When replacing a failed circuit breaker, always use an approved circuit breaker with a current rating equal to or less than the circuit breaker being replaced. Only use the approved Type II modified reset circuit breakers. NEVER use a Type I (automatic reset) or Type III (manual reset) circuit breaker. A fuse with a current rating equal to or less than the circuit breaker being replaced can also be used.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

JUMP STARTING VEHICLES

Introduction

Jump starting a vehicle is not a recommended practice due to the various battery installations and electrical options.

However, if your battery is discharged (dead), you may be able to start it by using energy from a good battery in another vehicle. This is termed jump starting. Be sure to follow the precautions and instructions below.

WARNING!

Batteries contain acid that can burn and gasses that can explode. Ignoring safety procedures may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Never jump start a battery near fire, flames, or electrical sparks. Batteries generate explosive gases that could explode. Keep sparks, flame, and lighted cigarettes away from batteries. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Never remove or tamper with battery caps. Ignoring this could allow battery acid to contact eyes, skin, fabrics, or painted surfaces. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Be careful that metal tools (or any metal in contact with the positive terminal) do not contact the positive battery terminal and any other metal on the vehicle at the same time. Remove metal jewelry and avoid leaning over the battery.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

To Jump Start Your Vehicle

WARNING!

When jump starting using a battery booster, it is best to jump start with an equivalently powered vehicle. Verify that the booster battery has the same volt and CCA specifications as the dead battery before attempting to jump start. Failure to comply may cause an explosion resulting in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Applying a higher voltage booster battery may cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as relays, Electronic Control units or electronics in general. Failure to comply may result in equipment damage.

CAUTION

Improper hook-up of jumper cables or not following these procedures can damage the alternator or cause serious damage to both vehicles.

WARNING!

Heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Preparing the vehicles:

1. Remove any personal jewelry that may come in contact with the battery terminals.
2. Select a jumper cable that is long enough to attach to both vehicles in a way that ensures neither vehicle touches each other.
3. Position the two vehicles together, but do not allow them to touch.
4. Turn OFF all lights, heater, radio, and any other accessory on both vehicles.
5. Set the parking brakes: pull out the Yellow button located on the dash.
6. Shift the transmission into park position or neutral for manual transmissions. (See Operating the Transmission on page 4-22 and Parking Brake Valve on page 4-43, for transmission shifting and parking brake information.)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

7. If either vehicle is equipped with battery disconnects ensure they are in the **"OFF"** position prior to connecting the two vehicles.

Connect the batteries:

1. Attach one end of a jumper cable to the **positive (+)** terminal of the discharged (dead) battery. This will have a large **red +** or **P** on the battery case, post, or clamp.
2. Attach the other end of the same cable to the **positive (+)** terminal of the good (booster) battery.
3. Attach the remaining jumper cable **FIRST** to the **negative (-)** terminal **(black or N)** of the good battery.
4. Attach the other end of the negative cable to a bare metal part not bolted to the engine block.

NOTE
Always connect positive (+) to positive (+) and negative (-) to negative (-).

5. If either vehicle is equipped with battery disconnects, ensure that they are in the **"ON"** position.
6. Start the vehicle that has the good battery first. Let it run for 5 minutes.
7. Start the vehicle that has the discharged (dead) battery.

If the engine fails to start, do not continue to crank the starter but contact the nearest authorized dealer.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Remove jumper cables:

⚠ WARNING!
When disconnecting jumper cables, make sure they do not get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Reverse the above procedure exactly when removing the jumper cables. With engine running, disconnect jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact reverse order, making sure to first remove the negative cable from the vehicle with the discharged battery.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

VEHICLE RECOVERY AND SPRING BRAKES

Vehicle Recovery Guidelines

Your vehicle is equipped with removable Recovery Hitches, designed for short distance recovery purposes only. Use only the provided hitches, according the following instructions. When using this connection, do not transport your vehicle over long distances. (If your vehicle does not have the proper hitches, contact your dealer.)

All lubricating and clutch application oil pressure is provided by an engine-driven pump, which will not work when the engine is stopped. You could seriously damage your vehicle by towing it with the driveline connected and the drive wheels on the ground. Worse, when vehicles are towed, either by wrecker or piggyback, the lubricant in the top front of the drive axle will drain to the rear. This will leave the top components dry. The resulting friction may damage them. Always remove the main drive axle shafts before towing your vehicle.

CAUTION

Remove the drive axle shafts or lift the driving wheels off the ground before towing the vehicle. Towing the vehicle with either the wheels on the ground or the axle shafts in the axles will cause damage to the axle gears.

CAUTION

If your vehicle has a Meritor axle with a driver-controlled main differential lock, install the caging bolt before removing the axles for towing, see Driver Controlled Main Differential Lock on page 2-16. Installing the caging bolt prevents damage by locking internal axle components in position.

CAUTION

Connect only to the Recovery Hitches, see Vehicle Recovery Guidelines on page 2-12. Connections to other structural parts could damage the vehicle. Do not attach to bumpers or brackets. Use only equipment designed for this purpose. Failure to comply may result in equipment damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1 Recovery Hitch Sockets

Recovery Procedure

1. Review and understand all the cautions and warnings of this section, see Vehicle Recovery Guidelines on page 2-12.
2. Install the recovery hitches, see Recovery Hitch Installation on page 2-15.
3. Disconnect the drive axle shafts and cover the open hubs. This is necessary because if the transmission is driven by the driveshaft (rear wheels on the ground), no lubricant will reach the gears and bearings, causing damage to the transmission.
4. Install the recovery rigging using a safety chain system, see Recovery Rigging on page 2-19.
5. Make sure the recovered vehicle's parking brakes are released.
6. If you desire to use the recovered vehicle’s brakes, ensure that the vehicle’s air system is connected to that of the recovery vehicle. Ensure that any air line that has been removed from a driver-controlled main differential lock is firmly capped to prevent loss of air pressure from the recovery vehicle if it is supplying air pressure.
   If you don’t desire to use the recovered vehicle’s brakes, ensure that you cage the spring brakes before attempting to move the vehicle, see Driver Controlled Main Differential Lock on page 2-16.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Before towing a vehicle, test your air brakes to ensure that you have properly connected and inspected the recovery vehicle's brake system. Failure to do so could lead to a loss of vehicle control which may result in an accident involving death or personal injury.

7. Follow state/provincial and local laws that apply to vehicles in tow.
8. Do not tow vehicles at speeds in excess of 55 mph (90 km/h).

For additional information concerning heavy duty truck recovery, refer to the following Technology & Maintenance Council (TMC) literature.

- Recommended Practice #602–A — "Front Towing Devices For Trucks and Tractors."
- Recommended Practice #602–B — "Recovery Attachment Points For Trucks, Tractors, and Combination Vehicles."
- Recommended Practice #626 — "Heavy Duty Truck Towing Procedures."

Copies of these can be obtained from the following address:

Technology & Maintenance Council
950 N. Glebe Road
(703) 838-1763
Arlington, VA 22203
Email: tmc@trucking.org
http://tmc.truckline.com

Recovery Hitch Connection

Specially designed hitches are required to recover your vehicle. The recovery hitches attach to the frame, see Recovery Hitch Assembly on page 2-15.

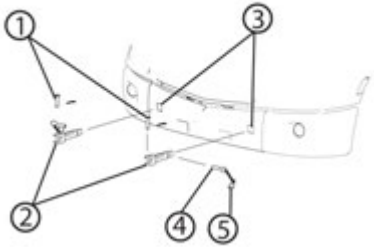
Two hitch assemblies, made up of the following parts, are recommended for the proper recovery of your vehicle: see Recovery Hitch Assembly on page 2-15.

WARNING!

Do not use parts from other trucks or materials from other sources to repair a hitch or to replace a missing hitch. The parts provided for recovery are made of high strength still specifically designed for vehicle recovery. Failure to use the correct factory equipment may result in an accident involving death or personal injury.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

If your vehicle is not equipped with the proper recovery hitch assembly, contact an authorized dealer to obtain the proper equipment.



Recovery Hitch Assembly

1 Tow Pin
2 Tow Hitch
3 Square Hitch Socket
4 Lock Pin
5 Lock Tab

Recovery Hitch Installation

Use the following procedure to install the Vehicle Recovery Hitches. See Recovery Hitch Assembly illustration for part identification.

1. Check square sockets behind lower bumper for obstructions, clear if necessary.
2. With lock pins removed, insert hitches through bumper and into the square hitch socket.
3. Align the hole in the tow hitch with the square hitch socket hole.
4. Insert the lock pin into the square hitch socket hole and through the hole in the tow hitch until the lock tab is within the square hitch socket.
5. Rotate the lock pin 90 degrees to secure the pin in place.
6. Remove the hitches and store all parts after recovering the vehicle.

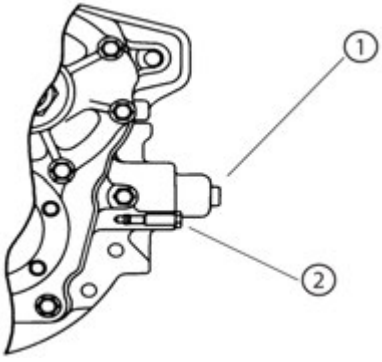
Driver Controlled Main Differential

Follow these steps to lock a driver-controlled main differential.

WARNING!

An open air line on the recovered vehicle will cause a leak in the air system of the recovery vehicle if both vehicles' brake systems are connected. This could cause a loss of system air, which can cause the service brakes not to function, resulting in the sudden application of the spring brakes causing wheel lock-up, loss of control, or overtake by following vehicles. You could be in an accident involving death or personal injury. Ensure that any air line that has been removed from a driver-controlled main differential lock is firmly capped to prevent loss of air pressure from the recovery vehicle if it is supplying air pressure.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Driver Controlled Main Differential Lock

1 Air Line (remove to install Caging Bolt)
2 Caging Bolt (in storage location)

1. Lift driving wheels off the ground or remove the driveline and axle shafts before towing the vehicle.

CAUTION

Failure to lift the driving wheels off the ground or remove the driveline and axle shafts before towing the vehicle could seriously damage your vehicle. All lubricating and clutch application oil pressure is provided by an engine-driven pump, which does not work when the engine is stopped. When vehicles are towed either by wrecker or piggyback, lubricant in the top front of the drive axle will drain to the rear. This will leave the top components dry, resulting in friction that will seriously damage these components.

2. Cover open hubs when removing drive axle shafts.

CAUTION

Water, dirt and other material can enter an open hub or axle. This can contaminate the axle fluid and cause possible damage to components. Ensure that the hubs are covered with plastic whenever a drive axle shaft is removed.

3. For vehicles with driver-controlled main differential lock, install the caging bolt before removing the axle shafts for towing.
   a. Remove the air line and firmly cap.
   b. Remove the caging bolt from its storage hole.
   c. Screw the caging bolt into the air line hole. When fully engaged, a 0.25 - 0.5 in. (6.35-12.7 mm) space will remain between the air cylinder and the bolt head.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

This action will lock the differential by pushing a piston into a "lock" position.

CAUTION

Failure to install the caging bolt when towing vehicles with driver-control main differential lock can result in damage by failing to lock internal components in position.

WARNING!

Ensure there are no open air lines on the recovered vehicle if the recovery vehicle and recovered vehicle brake systems are connected. An open air line on the recovered vehicle will cause a leak in the air brake system of the recovery vehicle possibly causing death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

A recovered vehicle will have no operational brake system. Additionally, the rear axle spring brakes will probably be applied.

- If you desire to use the recovered vehicle's brakes, ensure that the vehicles air system is connected to that of the recovery vehicle. Also ensure that any air line that has been removed from a driver-controlled main differential lock is firmly capped to prevent loss of air pressure from the recovery vehicle.
- If you don't desire to use the recovered vehicle's brakes, ensure that you cage the spring brakes before attempting to move the vehicle.

4. Install recovery hitches and rigging.

CAUTION

Connect recovery rigging only to hitches intended for that purpose. Do not attach to bumpers or brackets. Connections to other structural parts could damage the vehicle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Recovery Hitch Capacities

The maximum rated loads for vehicle recovery varies depending on the direction or angle of pull. These capacities are listed in the table below and are for the two hitches working together, simultaneously.

Hitch Capacities

DIRECTION OF PULL	MAXIMUM CAPACITY (Lb) *
Directly Forward	80,000
Directly Vertical or Horizontally to the Side	14,600
45º in any Direction	20,000
* Both hitches pulled simultaneously.	

CAUTION

Recovery pull maximums assume the tow rigging evenly distributes the load between both recovery hitches. See examples in Recovery Rigging on page 2-19 for details. Serious damage to the vehicle may occur if rigging is not connected properly.

CAUTION

When recovering ditched or bogged vehicles, stay well below Maximum Capacities. Even at loads below maximum, the physical strain of recovering a vehicle could damage axles, suspensions, fifth wheels, etc.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Recovery Rigging

To connect to the vehicle, follow the suggested rigging methods below.

- Use a double chain or cable setup that distributes the load equally to both hitches. See 1 or 2 in Recovery Rigging illustration.
- Never loop a single chain or cable through both hitches (3).
- Use a spreader or equalizer bar to distribute the load on both hitches (1).
- If no spreader bar is available, connect the main tow chain or cable no closer than 6 ft. from the vehicle (2).

1. Spreader Bar or Equalizer

Preferred

2. Minimum 6 FT.

Acceptable

3. NEVER USE SINGLE CHAIN OR CABLE LOOPED THROUGH TOW DEVICES

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Returning Vehicle to Service

You will have to add lubricant to prevent damage after your vehicle has been towed.

1. Into the pinion cage, add 1 pint (.47 liter) of lubricant or into the interaxle differential, add 2 pints (.94 liter) of approved lubricant.
2. After adding the specified type and amount of lubricant, drive the vehicle. It should be unloaded. Drive 1 to 2 miles (1.5 to 3 km) at a speed lower than 25 mph (40 km/h). This will thoroughly circulate the lubricant through the assembly.

Spring Brakes—Manual Release

Recovering a vehicle requires that you release the parking brakes. There may be times when there is not enough air pressure to release the parking brakes. In such cases, the parking brakes (or Spring Brakes) can be manually released.

WARNING!

Do not drive vehicle with malfunctioning brakes. If one of the brake circuits should become inoperative, braking distances will increase substantially and handling characteristics while braking will be affected. You could lose control of your vehicle or cause an accident. Have it towed to the nearest dealer or qualified repair facility for repair. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

The brakes can be released in this manner should the pressure in the air system not be enough to release them. This may occur in instances where the engine's air compressor is not able to get the system up to operating pressure.

WARNING!

Do not disassemble a spring brake chamber. These chambers contain a powerful spring that is compressed. Sudden release of this spring may result in death or personal injury.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Do not operate a vehicle when the spring brakes have been manually released. Driving a vehicle after its spring brakes are manually released is extremely dangerous. The brakes may not function. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

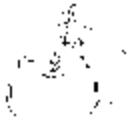
Always secure the vehicle with wheel chocks, chains, or other safe means to prevent rolling before manually releasing the spring brakes. Releasing the spring brakes on an unsecured vehicle could lead to an accident. The vehicle could roll, which may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

To move a vehicle immobilized by the spring brakes due to loss of air pressure in the brake system, perform the following procedure:

1. Remove the cap from the spring chamber.

2. Remove the release stud assembly from the side pocket, and remove the release nut and washer from the release stud.

3. Slide out the release stud.



4. Insert the release stud through the opening in the spring chamber where the cap was removed. Insert it into the pressure plate. Turn the release stud 1/4 turn clockwise in the pressure plate. This secures the cross pin into the cross pin area of the pressure plate and locks it into the manual release position.

5. Assemble the release stud washer and nut on the release stud.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6. With a wrench, turn the release stud assembly nut until the compression spring is 90-95 percent caged. While doing this, check to make sure the push rod (adapter push rod or service push rod) is retracting. Do not over-torque the release stud assembly. (S-Cam type maximum: 50 lb-ft, Wedge type maximum: 30 lb-ft). The spring brake is now mechanically released.

Sand, Mud, Snow and Ice

If the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, snow, or ice:

- Move the gearshift lever or selector from First to Reverse.
- Apply light pressure on the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in gear.
- Remove your foot from the accelerator while shifting.
- Do not race the engine.
- For best traction and safety, avoid spinning the wheels.

WARNING!

Do not spin the wheels faster than 35 mph (55 km/h). Spinning a tire at speedometer readings faster than 35 mph (55 km/h) can be dangerous. Tires can explode from spinning too fast. Under some conditions, a tire may be spinning at a speed twice that shown on the speedometer. Any resulting tire explosion could cause death or personal injury to a bystander or passenger, as well as extensive vehicle damage: including tire, transmission and/or rear axle malfunction.

Comply with the following instructions to avoid transmission damage:

- Always start vehicle in motion with the shift lever in first gear.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Be sure that transmission is fully engaged in gear before releasing the clutch pedal (manual only).
- Do not shift into reverse while the vehicle is moving.
- If the vehicle needs to be recovered from being stuck, do not permit the vehicle to be towed for long distances without removing the driveshaft.

Tire Chains

If you need tire chains, install them on both sides of the driving axle.

CAUTION

Chains on the tires of only one tandem axle can damage the driveline U-joints and the interaxle differential. Repairs could be costly and time-consuming. Failure to comply may result in equipment damage.

Towing the Vehicle

Towing the vehicle should be done by either an authorized dealer or a commercial vehicle towing service. The dealer or commercial towing service will have the necessary equipment to safely tow the vehicle and should be able to make arrangements to limit any damage to the vehicle. The towing service and the dealer should be aware of towing regulations and safety precautions.

The towing service will ensure that the following precautions are taken:

- Use of a safety chain system.
- Abide by all local towing regulations.
- Ensure that the towing device does not contact any surfaces that could be damaged while in transit.
- If towing from the front, ensure that the rear axles are prepared for towing.
- If towing from the rear, ensure that all body components such as roof, side and chassis fairings are secured properly to avoid damage while in transit.

WARNING!

Secure the roof, side and chassis fairings while towing from the rear. An unsecured fairing may come off of the vehicle during transit. Failure to secure the fairings while towing may cause an injury accident resulting in death or personal injury.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

INSTRUMENT PANEL

Instruments and Controls 3-5
Menu Control Switch (MCS) 3-8

WARNING SYMBOLS

Standard Warning Lights and Audible Alarm 3-9
Warning Light / Indicator Symbols 3-11
Description of Warning Symbols 3-19

DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY

Introduction 3-25

STANDARD GAUGES

Introduction 3-31
Speedometer 3-31
Odometer / Trip Meter 3-32
Tachometer 3-32
Engine Hours / Outside Air Temperature 3-33
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge 3-34

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Water Temperature Gauge 3-35
Fuel Gauge 3-36
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Gauge 3-37
Primary (Secondary) Air Pressure Gauge (Air Reservoir) 3-37

OPTIONAL GAUGES

Introduction 3-39
Forward Drive Axle Temperature Gauge 3-39
Rear Drive Axle Temperature Gauge 3-40

STEERING COLUMN-MOUNTED CONTROLS

Steering Column Controls 3-41
Horn 3-46

DASH- AND DOOR-MOUNTED CONTROLS

Ignition Switch 3-47
Hazard Flasher 3-47
Daytime Running Lights 3-48
Panel Light Dimmer 3-49
ID and Clearance Lights Switch 3-49

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Dome Light 3-49
Fog Lights Switch 3-50
Air Suspension Deflate Switch (Dump Valve) . . . 3-50
Cruise Control Switch 3-51
Regeneration Switch 3-52
Power Mirror Switch 3-53
Mirror Heat Switch 3-54
Power Window Switch 3-54
Power Door Lock Switch 3-55
Jacobs Engine Brake or Cummins "C" Brake Switch 3-55
Interaxle Differential Lock Switch 3-56
Two-Speed Rear Axle (Range) Switch 3-56
Fifth Wheel Lock (Slider Adjustment) Switch . . . 3-57
Parking Brake Valve and Trailer Air Supply Valve . 3-57
Power Port 3-60
Cupholders/Ashtray 3-60
Shift Pattern Display. 3-61

https://truckmanualshub.com/

HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Cab Controls 3-62
Introduction 3-63
Manual Controls 3-65

ACCESSORIES

Navigation System 3-69
Radio 3-70
Glove Compartment 3-70
Vehicle Telematic System 3-71

https://truckmanualshub.com/

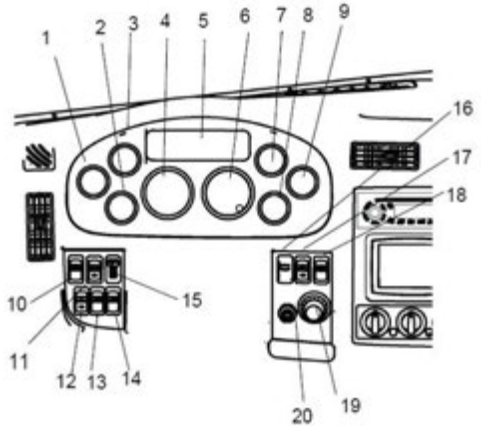
INSTRUMENT PANEL

Instruments and Controls

The dash includes standard gauges and switches. Your vehicle may come with all or some of the switches and gauges discussed here. The location of switches on the dash will vary depending on the options ordered and how your vehicle was configured.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

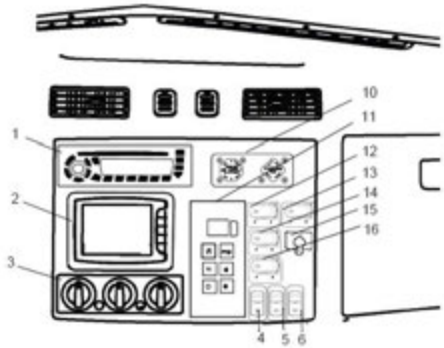
LEFT SIDE



1. Engine Oil Pressure
2. DEF Gauge
3. Fuel Level
4. Tachometer
5. Driver Information Display
6. Speedometer
7. Primary Air Pressure
8. Secondary Air Pressure
9. Water Temperature
10. Headllights
11. Clearance Lights
12. Hazard Switch
13. Optional
14. Optional
15. Panel Lights
16. Engine Fan
17. Cruise Control On/Off
18. Cruise Control Select
19. Menu Control Switch
20. Ignition

https://truckmanualshub.com/

RIGHT SIDE



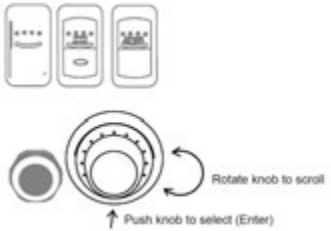
1. Radio
2. Storage or Optional Navigation
3. HVAC Controls
4. Emission Controls
5. Engine Brake (on/off) (Optional)
6. Engine Brake (Select) (Optional)
7. Optional Electric Switch*
8. Optional Electric Switch*
9. Optional Electric Switch*
10. Park Brake Controls
11. Transmission Display (Automatic)
12. Optional Air Switch
13. Optional Air Switch
14. Optional Air Switch
15. Optional USB Port
16. Optional Switch

*These switches are not shown. These switch locations are available only if the automatic transmission selector is not mounted (item 11).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Menu Control Switch (MCS)

The MCS is used to navigate the Driver Information Display unit. The Menu Control Switch is located on the D Panel as shown in the illustration below.



The MCS has the following functions:

- Rotating the MSC
  - Selecting display
  - Setting values
- Pushing the MSC
  - Confirming desired selection

https://truckmanualshub.com/

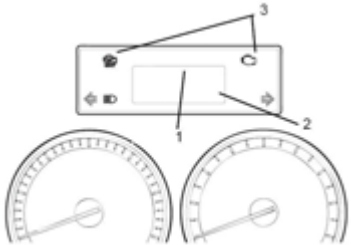
WARNING SYMBOLS

Standard Warning Lights and Audible Alarm

The warning lights and audible alarm may indicate a system malfunction. Check the lights frequently, and respond properly as soon as you see one go on. These lights could save you from a serious accident.

WARNING!

Do not ignore a warning light or audbile alarm. These signals tell you something is wrong with your vehicle. It could be a failure in an important system, such as the brakes, which could lead to an accident. Have the appropriate system checked immediately.



1. Driver Information Display
2. Status Indicator
3. Lower Light Bar

Warning lights and indicator symbols will be shown in both areas 1 and 2. Area 3 is dedicated to the turn and high beam indicator symbols.

1. Driver Information Display: The display can show up to six warning lights. Warnings do not have fixed positions and are displayed in order of criticality. The most critical warning will be displayed on the top row and to the left. If more than six warnings are active, the menu control switch (MCS) can be used to scroll through the additional warnings.

2. Status Indicator: Additional lights and indicator symbols are displayed in the Status Indicator. They are limited to:

- Park Brake
- Transmission Gear (Automatic transmissions only)
- Warnings
- Cruise Control - active
- Clock alarm bell

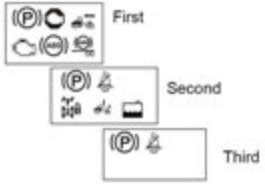
Refer to Warning Light/Indicator Symbols on page 3-11 for information on each symbol.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Instrument System Self Test:

When the ignition switch is turned on the instrumentation system will undergo a Self Test. This test will verify the operation of the gauges and warnings.

During the Instrumentation System Self Test, three screens will sequentially display warning icons (approximately 3 seconds each screen) on the Information Display. These are:



Refer to Warning Light/Indicator Symbols on page 3-11 for information on each symbol.

Completing this sequence will indicate a successful Self Test. Have your instrumentation system checked by a qualitfied service technician if does not successfully complete.

Audible Alarm:

The audible alarm will sound during the Instrumentation System Self Test. The audible alarm will also sound in conjunction with some warning lights. These events include but are not limited to headlight on, fifth wheel, stop engine, primary/secondary air, and driver door open warnings.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Optional Lights:

Additional lights may be operational depending on individual vehicle specifications. These will be included in the Instrument System Self Test.

NOTE
Some optional lights may illuminate even though your vehicle is not equipped with that particular feature.

Warning Light / Indicator Symbols

The following is a list of Warning Light / Indicator Symbols. Reading left to right, the table header identifies:

- the Symbol Name
- the appearance of the Symbol
- the Symbol Color when it is illuminated
- whether the symbol is standard (Std) or optional (Opt)
- whether the symbol has an associated check message
- the Page Number reference for additional information

Symbols are listed by major component sections.

Example: Engine, and then in alphabetical order.

Warning Light/Indicator Symbols

Symbol Name	Symbol	Color	Std/ Opt	Msg	Page
1. Active Warnings, Exclamation Point	!	Red	Std		on page 3-19
2. Active Warnings, Number	1	Yellow	Std		on page 3-19

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Symbol Name	Symbol	Color	Std/ Opt	Msg	Page
3. Active Warnings, Triangle		Yellow	Std		on page 3-19
4. Alternator	ALT	Red	Opt		on page 3-19
5. Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)	ABS	Yellow	Std		on page 3-19
6. Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Trailer	ABS	Yellow	Std		on page 3-19
7. Axle, Inter-Axle Differential Locked (Tandem Axles)		Yellow	Std		on page 3-20
8. Axle, Stability Control		Yellow	Std		on page 3-20

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Symbol Name	Symbol	Color	Std/ Opt	Msg	Page
9. Axle, Traction Control		Yellow	Std		on page 3-20
10. Brake System	BRAKE		Opt		on page 3-21
11. Clock, Alarm Bell		Yellow	Std		on page 3-21
12. Cruise Control, Active		Yellow	Std		on page 3-21
13. Dump Truck, Body Up		Yellow	Opt		on page 3-21
14. Dump Truck, Trailer Body Up		Yellow	Opt		on page 3-21

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Symbol Name	Symbol	Color	Std/ Opt	Msg	Page
15. Emissions, Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)		Yellow	Std		on page 3-21
16. Emissions, High Exhaust System Temperture (HEST)		Yellow	Std		on page 3-21
17. Emissions, Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)		Yellow	Std		on page 3-21
18. Engine, Check Engine		Yellow	Std		on page 3-21
19. Engine, Ether Start		Green	Opt		on page 3-21
20. Engine, Heater		Yellow	Opt		on page 3-22

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Symbol Name	Symbol	Color	Std/ Opt	Msg	Page
21. Engine, Low Coolant Level		Yellow	Std		on page 3-22
22. Engine, Overspeed	RPM	Red	Opt		on page 3-22
23. Engine, Retarder (Brake)		Green	Opt		on page 3-22
24. Engine, Stop Engine		Red	Std		on page 3-22
25. Engine, Wait To Start	WAIT	Yellow	Opt		on page 3-22
26. Fifth Wheel, King Pin Lock		Red	Opt		on page 3-22

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Symbol Name	Symbol	Color	Std/ Opt	Msg	Page
27. Fifth Wheel, Slide Unlocked		Red	Std		on page 3-22
28. Lights, High Beam		Blue	Std		on page 3-22
29. Message Waiting		Green	Opt		on page 3-23
30. Park Brake		Red	Std		on page 3-23
31. Power Take-off (PTO)	PTO	Green	Opt		on page 3-23
32. Power Take-off (PTO), Pump Mode	PUMP MODE	Green	Opt		on page 3-23

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Symbol Name	Symbol	Color	Std/ Opt	Msg	Page
33. Refrigerator		Green	Opt		on page 3-23
34. Seat Belt, Fasten		Red	Std		on page 3-23
35. Suspension Dump		Yellow	Std		on page 3-23
36. Tire Inflation		Yellow	Opt		on page 3-23
37. Transmission, Auxiliary	AUX	Yellow	Opt		on page 3-23
38. Transmission, Check		Red	Opt		on page 3-23

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Symbol Name	Symbol	Color	Std/ Opt	Msg	Page
39. Transmission, Range Inhibit	RANGE INHIBIT	Red	Opt		on page 3-24
40. Transmission, Oil Filter		Yellow	Opt		on page 3-24
41. Transmission, Oil Temperature High		Yellow	Opt		on page 3-24
42. Turn Signal, Left		Green	Std		on page 3-24
43. Turn Signal, Right		Green	Std		on page 3-24
44. Voltage		Orange	Std		on page 3-24

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Description of Warning Symbols

1. Active Warnings, Exclamation Point

Illuminates when a red warning is active. Use the MCS knob to view the warnings that are active.

2. Active Warnings, Number

Illuminates the total number of red and yellow active warnings. Use the MCS to view the active warnings if the display shows a > symbol.

3. Active Warnings, Triangle

Illuminates when a yellow warning is active. Use the MCS knob to view the warnings that are active.

4. Alternator

Illuminates if the alternator is not charging. (For alternators with warning lamp output signal.)

5. Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

Illuminates during the Instrumentation System Self Test. Have the ABS system checked by a Peterbilt dealer if the ABS Warning Lamp stays on for more than 3 seconds.

Illuminates during normal operating conditions to indicate a problem with the ABS System.

Illuminates when a problem exists with the optional Wheel Spin Control feature.

6.Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Trailer

Illuminates during the Instrumentation System Self Test and the tractor/truck is connected with a ABS equipped trailer.

Illuminates during normal operating conditions to indicate a problem with the Trailer ABS System. This should be checked by a Peterbilt dealer as soon as possible.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

- Tractors/Trucks and trailers built after 3/1/01 must be able to turn on an In-Cab Trailer ABS Warning Lamp (per U.S. FMVSS121). The industry chose Power Line Communication (PLC) as the standard method to turn it on.
- On trailers built prior to 3/1/01 verify trailer ABS system status via the required external warning lamp mounted on the trailer. The indicator lamp on the trailer should be yellow and identified with the letters "ABS".

7. Axle, Inter-Axle Differential Locked (Tandem Axles)

Illuminates when the inter-axle differential switch is ON thus locking the inter-axle differential. This powers the forward rear and the rear rear differentials equally. When the switch is turned off (inter-axle differential unlocked) the engine power is allowed to flow to any of the 4 drive tires based on the differential effect (mostly to the forward rear differential). (This feature is standard on all tandem axles).

8. Axle, Stability Control (ESC or Electronic Stability Control)

Calculates the driver's intended path of travel from wheel speed and steering angle sensors, then compares calculations to the actual direction of travel. The system uses individual wheel brakes to re-adjust the path of the vehicle.

- Illuminates during the power-on self-test when the ignition is turned ON. It turns off after a few seconds if no system problems are detected. If an ESC problem is detected, the ESC warning lamp will turn on and stay on.
- Illuminates when the ESC system is regulating individual wheel brakes to correct the vehicle's direction of travel.

9. Axle, Traction Control (ATC or Automatic Traction Control)

Watches vehicle's wheel speeds to detect slippage and may reduce engine power, or apply vehicle brakes, to help increase traction.

- Illuminates during the power-on self-test when the ignition is turned ON. It turns off after a few seconds if no system problems are detected. If an ATC problem is detected, the ATC warning lamp will turn on and stay on.
- Illuminates when the ATC is regulating wheel spin and turns off after the traction control event has ended.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Flashes continuously when the ATC/ Deep Snow & Mud switch is turned on, indicating that this feature is active.

10. Brake System

Illuminates to indicate a malfunction in the hydraulic brake system (when equipped with Hybraulic brakes).

11. Clock, Alarm Bell

Illuminates when the alarm is set. It will flash when the clock alarm is active.

12. Cruise Control, Active

Illuminates when cruise control is active.

13. Dump Truck, Body Up

Illuminates when Truck Dump Body is up.

14. Dump Truck, Trailer Body Up

Illuminates when Trailer Dump Body is up.

15. Emissions, Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

Illuminates when diesel particulate trap is plugged. This warning will also illuminate when regeneration operation is disabled.

16. Emissions, High Exhaust System Temperture (HEST)

Illuminates when the exhaust gas temperature and exhaust components become extremely hot.

17. Emissions, Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

Illuminates when an engine emissions failure has occurred. The vehicle can be safely driven but should be serviced to correct the problem. The situation should not be considered an emergency. In some cases, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp will activate in conjunction with the High Exhaust Temperature, Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) and Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Warning Lights.

18. Engine, Check Engine

Illuminates when a problem exists, but the vehicle can still be safely driven. Vehicle should be serviced to correct the problem but the situation should not be considered an emergency.

19. Engine, Ether Start

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Illuminates when ether start switch is on.

20. Engine, Heater

Illuminates when Engine Heater switch is on.

21. Engine, Low Coolant Level

Illuminates with an audible alarm indicating critically low coolant level. The vehicle must be serviced to correct the problem but the situation should not be considered an emergency.

22. Engine, Overspeed

Illuminates when engine RPM is exceeded.

23. Engine, Retarder (Brake)

Illuminates when the engine retarder (compression brake or exhaust brake) switch is turned on. (Engine retarders are an option.)

24. Engine, Stop Engine

Illuminates and an audible alarm tone will sound when a major engine system problem exists.

WARNING!

This should be considered an emergency. You should stop the vehicle as safely as possible and turn OFF the ignition. The vehicle must be serviced and the problem corrected before driving again. Failure to do so may cause severe engine damage or cause an accident.

25. Engine, Wait To Start

Illuminates when engine grid heater is on (PACCAR PX-6 and PX-8).

26. Fifth Wheel, King Pin Lock

Illuminates when air actuated fifth wheel King Pin is unlocked.

27. Fifth Wheel, Slide Unlocked

Illuminates and an audible warning tone will sound when the air operated sliding fifth wheel switch is on, thus unlocking the sliding fifth wheel. The light and an audible warning tone should NOT be considered an emergency but simply as a reminder to turn off the switch to lock the sliding fifth wheel before driving. This switch should not be operated while driving. (Sliding fifth wheels are an option).

28. Lights, High Beam

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Illuminates when the high beams are on. This icon will flash with audible alarm if the headlamps are left on when the door is open. In addition, this icon will flash, but without an audible alarm, if there is a problem with the low beam headlights or the low beam headlight wiring. In such event, the high beam headlights will turn on at 50% normal brightness.

29. Message Waiting

Illuminates with telematic equipped messaging.

30. Park Brake

Illuminates in the status indicator when parking brakes are applied and the vehicle is stationary. This symbol will also illuminate in the Driver Information Display if the parking brakes are applied and the vehicle is in motion.

31. Power Take-off (PTO)

Illuminates when the PTO is engaged.

NOTE
Do not drive vehicle with PTO engaged.

32. Power Take-off (PTO), Pump Mode

Illuminates with remote throttle application. Indicates pump mode is active.

33. Refrigerator

Illuminates to indicate that the refrigerator is on and ignition is off.

34. Seat Belt, Fasten

Illuminates when the ignition key is turned on as a reminder to fasten your seat belt.

35. Suspension Dump

Illuminates when suspension air bags are deflated.

36. Tire Inflation

Illuminates when tire pressures need to be checked. (Tire Pressure Monitoring System is an option)

37. Transmission, Auxiliary

Illuminates to indicate auxiliary transmission is in neutral.

38. Transmission, Check

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Illuminates when transmission has recorded a fault code. This icon may also appear in the Transmission Display menu of the Driver Information Display unit. If the user is in this display menu, the icon does not indicate a fault code.

39. Transmission, Range Inhibit

Illuminates with Allison 1000/2000 series transmissions with "Range Inhibit" output.

40. Transmission, Oil Filter

Illuminates when service is required (Allison transmissions only).

41. Transmission, Oil Temperature High

Illuminates when transmission lubricant temperature is too high. The information display will provide the current oil temperature when the icon is illuminated.

CAUTION
This should be considered an emergency. You should stop the vehicle as safely as possible and turn OFF the ignition. The vehicle must be serviced and the problem corrected before driving again. Failure to do so may cause severe transmission damage.

42. Turn Signal, Left

Blinks when the left turn signal or the hazard light function is operating.

43. Turn Signal, Right

Blinks when the right turn signal or the hazard light function is operating.

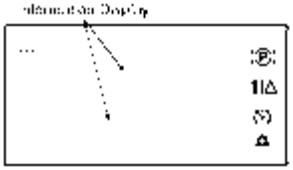
44. Voltage

Illuminates when transmission lubricant temperature is too high.The information display will provide the current oil temperature when the icon is illuminated.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY

Introduction



WARNING!

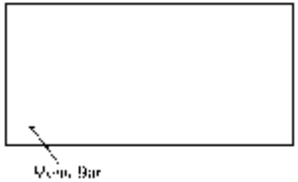
Do not look at the Driver Information Display for prolonged periods while the vehicle is moving. Only glance at the monitor briefly while driving. Failure to do so can result in the driver not being attentive to the vehicle's road position, which could lead to an accident and possible personal injury or equipment damage.

The Driver Information Display, located at the top of the instrument cluster, displays important vehicle information through a constant monitoring of systems when any of the following conditions are met:

- ignition key in ON or ACC positions
- ignition timer is active
- MCS button is pushed (independent of ignition key switch position)
- clock alarm sounds
- driver or passenger door is opened
- hazard warning lamp switch is on

The various functions may be accessed by navigating through Menu Screens using the MCS. Refer to Menu Control Switch (MCS) on page 3-8 for more detail for the MCS.

The bullets in the Menu Bar allow access to each item by pushing the MCS when the desired bullet is highlighted.



In addition to a blank screen, the following are menu items and the information available within each menu selections.

3

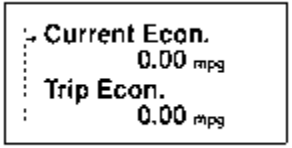
https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

Some Driver Information Display functions are only accessible when the vehicle is parked. Other functions are accessible while the vehicle is moving or when parked. Each function is identified in the following descriptions.

Fuel Economy

Accessible while parked or driving.

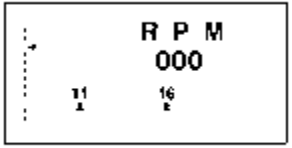


Current fuel economy - Indicates instantaneous fuel economy.

Trip fuel economy - Indicates trip fuel economy.

RPM Detail

Accessible while parked or driving.

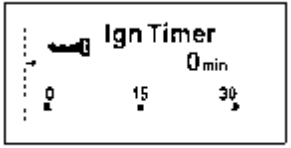


RPM reading of actual engine RPM. Engine RPM within the bar graph indicates the engine is operating in the most efficient RPM range. The display color will change if you are operating outside of this range.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Ignition Timer

Accessible while parked only.



Ignition timer is set from this menu. The ignition timer may be set for up to 30 minutes.

Trip Information

NOTE
When accessing the trip information menu, push the MCS on this menu (bullet). To exit, push the MCS again. To reset the trip values, press the Trip Odometer Reset Button on the main gauge instrument cluster.

Certain Trip Information functions area accessible when driving or when parked:

- Trip Economy
- Trip Average Speed

Other Trip Information functions are accessible only when parked:

- Trip Distance
- Trip Engine Hours
- Trip Idle Hours
- Trip Idle Percentage (%)
- PTO Hours
- PTO Trip Hours
- PTO Trip Percentage (%)

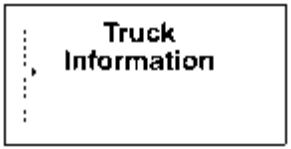
To reset the Trip Values, press the Trip Odometer Reset Button on the main gauge instrument cluster.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Truck Information

Accessible while parked only.

NOTE
When accessing the truck information menu, push the MCS on this menu (bullet). To exit, push the MCS again.



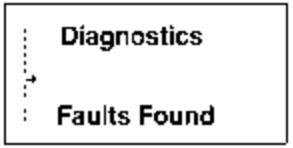
Truck information available:

- Chassis Number
- Engine Make
- Engine Model
- Engine SW Version
- Transmission Make
- Transmission Model
- Transmission SW Version
- ABS (Antilock Braking System) Make
- ABS Model
- ABS SW Version
- CECU (Cab Electronic Control Unit) Software Version
- CECU Hardware Version

Diagnostic Display

Accessible while parked only.

NOTE
"Faults Found" will only be active if a red or yellow warning lamp is illuminated.



The diagnostic display menu (bullet) will indicate a fault that is generated by the vehicle's Engine, ABS and/or Transmission systems. While on this menu item the display will either indicate "No Faults Found" or "Faults Found". If "Faults Found" is active, pushing the MCS will display new menus for more information.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Transmission Display

Automated transmissions only - accessible while parked or driving.

NOTE
Refer to the Automated Transmission Operator's Manual for additional information.

This menu will show gear number that coincides with the current transmission gear selected. The menu also displays the transmission icon to let the user know what screen they are in. (Does not indicate a fault code.)

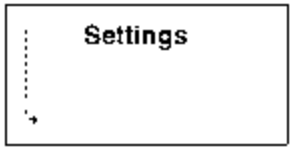
Settings Menu

Accessible while parked only.

NOTE
Refer to the Automated Transmission Operator's Manual for additional information.

The Settings menu screen allows the driver to view and/or change the following menu items:

- Display Format 12 Hour (AM/PM) or 24 Hour (military)
- Home/Local Time
- Alarm ON/OFF
- Alarm Time
- Units of measure
- Language (English, Spanish or French)



To Set Clock Display Format:

1. When in the Settings Menu, scroll through the list of menu items to "Format".
2. Press the MCS to display either 12 hour (AM/ PM) or 24 hour (military) time.

To Set Home, Local or Alarm Time:

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1. When in the Settings Menu, scroll through the list of menu items.
2. Press the MCS to select the item to change.

3. Rotate the MCS knob to change the hour. Press the MCS.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

STANDARD GAUGES

Introduction

On the pages that follow you will find descriptions of some of the gauges on your instrument panel. For more information about using them in driving, see "Starting and Operating the Vehicle" Also check the Index under the name of the gauge or function you want to know more about.

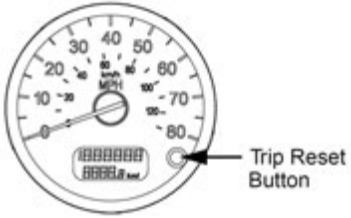
WARNING!

Do not ignore a warning light or audbile alarm. These signals tell you something is wrong with your vehicle. It could be a failure in an important system, such as the brakes, which could lead to an accident. Have the appropriate system checked immediately.

Some gauges will display a red LED warning light, with some accompanied by an audible alarm, whenever the limits of the function being displayed are exceeded.

Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the vehicle speed in miles per hour (mph) and in kilometers per hour (km/h). The speedometer also includes an odometer, trip meter, and trip reset button.



https://truckmanualshub.com/

Odometer / Trip Meter

The LCD display in the lower part of the speedometer contains the odometer and trip meter.

The odometer displays the total distance your vehicle has traveled. It will display in miles on an English speedometer or in kilometers on a metric speedometer. The maximum distance that can be shown on the odometer is "1 999 999" before it rolls over to zero.

The trip odometer displays how far the vehicle has gone on a particular trip. The trip odometer will display in miles on an English speedometer or in kilometers on a metric speedometer, in one tenth divisions. The maximum distance that can be shown on the trip odometer is "9999.9" before it rolls over to zero.

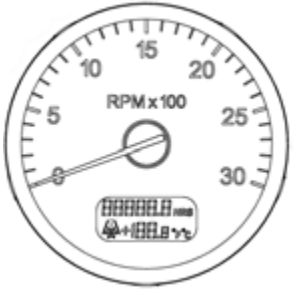
To reset the trip odometer, press and hold the trip reset button on the speedometer. The numbers will reset to 0 and begin to count new miles/km traveled. This also resets the trip values in the Driver Information Display.

The trip reset button also toggles all displays between English and Metric.

NOTE
The Odometer/Trip Meter comes on when the door is opened or the key is in the accessory or ignition position. The Odometer/Trip Meter will remain on for 3 seconds after the door is closed or the ignition switch is turned off. This allows driver and service personnel to read the odometer without ignition switch being turned on.

Tachometer

Your tachometer measures the engine speed in revolutions- per-minute (RPM). The tachometer also includes an engine hour meter and outside air temperature display.



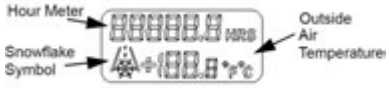
Watching your tachometer is important to driving efficiently. It will let you match driving speed and gear selection to the operating range of your engine. If your engine speed gets too high, you can select a higher gear to lower the RPM. If your engine speed drops

https://truckmanualshub.com/

too low, you can select a lower gear to raise the RPM.

Engine Hours / Outside Air Temperature

The LCD display in the lower part of the tachometer contains the engine hour meter and the outside air temperature display.



The engine hour meter will display the total number of hours the engine has been running. The maximum hours that can be shown are "99999.9" before the meter rolls over to zero.

The outside air temperature (OAT) will display the temperature outside the vehicle. The temperature can be displayed from -40° to 158° in Fahrenheit or -40° to 70° Celsius.The display will also alert the driver when the outside temperate approaches freezing (32°F or 0°C) by displaying a snowflake symbol. The symbol will turn on when the temperature drops below 34°F or 11°C and flash for the first 3 seconds, then stay on until the temperature goes above 37°F or 28°C

The temperature can display using Standard or Metric units. Press the trip reset button on the Speedometer 4 times within 4 seconds. This will also change the units shown by the Driver Information Display.

NOTE
The OAT will come on when the door is open and the key switch is in the accessory or ignition position. The OAT display will turn off when the ignition switch is turned off.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

The OAT uses a sensor (located at the bottom of the driver's side mirror assembly) to measure outside air temperature only. It is not capable of displaying the temperature of the road surface on either the temperature display or the snowflake icon.

NOTE

The effects of direct sunlight, or the use of mirror heat, will increase the outside air temperature displayed while the vehicle is stationary.

Engine Oil Pressure Gauge

It is important to maintain oil pressure within acceptable limits. Your engine manual will give normal operating pressures for your engine.

CAUTION

Continuing to operate your vehicle with insufficient oil pressure will cause serious engine damage.

- If your oil pressure fails to rise within 10 seconds after your engine starts, stop the engine and determine the cause.
- If your oil pressure suddenly drops while you are driving, bring the vehicle to a stop as soon as possible in a safe location off the road and turn off the engine. Wait a few minutes to allow oil to drain into the oil pan, and then check the oil level. Add oil if necessary. If the problem persists, contact an authorized service center.

Check the engine manufacturer's manual for the correct oil pressure ranges for your engine.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Water Temperature Gauge

The water temperature gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant. Under normal operating conditions the water temperature gauge should register between 165° and 205°F (74° and 90°C). Under certain conditions, somewhat higher temperatures may be acceptable. But the maximum allowable temperature is 210°F (99°C) with the cooling system pressurized, except for certain special engines. Check your engine manual to be sure.

Engine Overheating

WARNING!

Do not remove the radiator fill cap while the engine is hot. Scalding steam and fluid under pressure may escape and cause serious personal injuries. You could be badly burned.

- Wait until the coolant temperature is below 122°F (50°C).
- Protect face, hands, and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick rag to protect against escaping fluid and steam.
- Carefully and slowly turn the cap one-quarter of a turn or until it reaches the first stop—allowing excess pressure to escape—push down and turn for final removal.

Wait until the coolant temperature is below 122° F (50°C). Protect your face, hands, and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick rag to protect you against escaping fluid and steam. Before you completely remove the cap, carefully and slowly turn the cap part way to allow excess pressure to escape. Then push down and turn for final removal.

The cooling system may overheat if the coolant level is below normal or if there is a sudden loss of coolant (such as a worn hose splitting). It may also temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions such as climbing a long hill on a hot day or stopping after high-speed driving.

If the "Engine Coolant Temperature" warning light comes on, or you have any other reason to suspect the engine may be overheating:

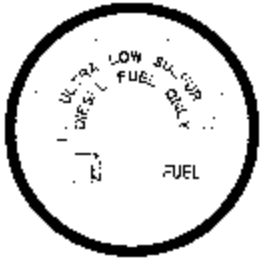
- Stop the vehicle, but DO NOT TURN OFF THE ENGINE unless a

https://truckmanualshub.com/

low water warning device indicates a loss of coolant.

- With the transmission in neutral, check to be certain the oil pressure gauge reads normal. Increase the engine speed to about 1100 - 1200 RPM, maximum. Return the idle speed to normal after 2 or 3 minutes. If the warning light does not go off or the temperature gauge does not begin to drop, then turn the engine off.
- If the overheating came from severe operating conditions, the temperature should have cooled by this time. If it has not, stop the engine and let it cool before checking to see if the coolant is low.

Fuel Gauge



PB002

WARNING!

Do not remove a fuel tank cap near an open flame. Hot fuel vapors are combustible and can cause an explosion or fire resulting in injury or death.

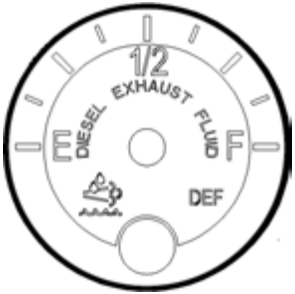
CAUTION

Use Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel only. Failure to do so may damage components of the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF).

The fuel gauge shows the approximate amount of fuel in the fuel tanks. Besides empty and full, the gauge also indicates 1/4, 1/2, and 3/4 of total capacity. You will want to keep your fuel tanks at least half full to reduce condensation of moisture in the tanks. This moisture can damage your engine.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Gauge



The diesel exhaust fluid gauge shows the approximate amount of DEF fluid in the DEF tank. Besides empty and full, the gauge also indicates 1/4, 1/2, and 3/4 of total capacity. DEF fluid is required to meet certain emission requirements. Maintain an adequate amount of diesel exhaust fluid at all times, as provided in the aftertreatment system operator manual. Please refer to the aftertreatment operator manual for more details about DEF fluid.

CAUTION
Use Diesel Exhaust Fluid only. Failure to do so may damage components of the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF).

Primary (Secondary) Air Pressure Gauge (Air Reservoir)

The air pressure gauge indicates the amount of air pressure in the brake system in pounds per square inch (psi).

- The primary gauge shows front reservoir air pressure.

- The secondary gauge shows pressure in the rear reservoir.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Ensure the air pressure registers more than 100 psi in both service systems before you move the vehicle. If the pressure in either circuit is too low for normal brake operation, the warning light will glow and the audible alarm will sound.

WARNING!

The air pressure warning light and the audible alarm indicate a dangerous situation. There is not enough air pressure in the reservoirs for repeated braking and the brake system has failed. If air pressure falls below 60 psi (414 kPa) the spring brakes could suddenly apply, causing a wheel lockup, loss of control, or your vehicle to be overtaken by following vehicles. You could be in an accident and severely injured. If these alarms come on while you are driving, bring your vehicle to a safe stop right away. If the light and alarm do not turn off at start-up, do not try to drive the vehicle until the problem is found and fixed.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

OPTIONAL GAUGES

Introduction

Maximum transmission temperature may vary, depending upon the transmission and type of lubricant. Check your transmission's owner's manual.

Forward Drive Axle Temperature Gauge

This gauge indicates the temperature of the lubricant in your vehicle's axle(s). These temperatures will vary with the kind of load you are carrying and the driving conditions you encounter. Maximum axle temperature may vary, depending upon the axle and type of lubricant. Very high temperatures signal a need to have your axle(s) lubrication checked.

CAUTION

Driving with very hot temperatures in your rear drive axles can cause serious damage to axle bearings and seals. Have your axle lubrication checked if you notice a sign of overheating.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Rear Drive Axle Temperature Gauge

This gauge indicates the temperature of the lubricant in your vehicle's axle(s). These temperatures will vary with the kind of load you are carrying and the driving conditions you encounter. Maximum axle temperature may vary, depending upon the axle and type of lubricant. Very high temperatures signal a need to have your axle(s) lubrication checked.

CAUTION

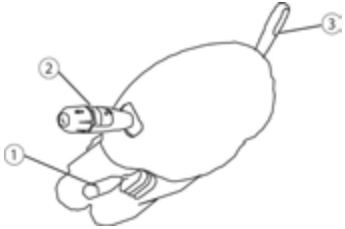
Driving with very hot temperatures in your rear drive axles can cause serious damage to axle bearings and seals. Have your axle lubrication checked if you notice a sign of overheating.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

STEERING COLUMN-MOUNTED CONTROLS

Steering Column Controls

Introduction



1. Tilt Telescoping Lever
2. Turn Signal Lever
3. Trailer Hand Brake

NOTE
The ignition key must be turned to ON for the signal/switch to operate.

The turn signal lever is mounted on the left side of the steering column.

The lever controls several functions: turn signal, high beam, and windshield wiper control.

1. Tilt/Telescoping Steering Column

Depending on your vehicle's configuration, you may have either a Tilt/Telescoping or a fixed steering column.

- The tilt feature allows forward and rearward movement of the wheel.
- The telescoping feature allows you to move the wheel up and down.

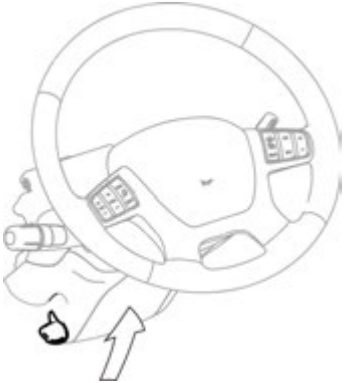
To activate these features, locate the Tilt/Telescoping lever.

WARNING!
Make all adjustments to the steering mechanism while the vehicle is stopped. Adjusting the Tilt-Telescoping Steering Wheel while the vehicle is in motion could cause loss of control. You wouldn't be able to steer properly and could have an accident resulting in death or personal injury.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

To adjust the steering wheel, PUSH and HOLD the lever down fully. Push or pull the wheel to the desired height and angle, then PUSH the lever back into the locked position.

Steering Column Locked



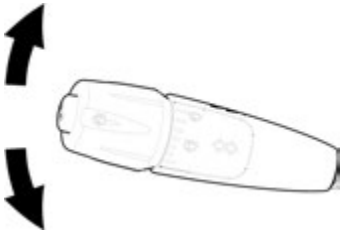
Steering Column Unlocked

2. Turn Signal/High Beam Switch

NOTE
The ignition key must be turned to ON for the signal/switch to operate.

The lever-action turn signal/high beam switch is located on the left side of the steering column. Each time a turn indicator is activated the buzzer emits a short beep.

Turn Signals



Turn Signal

- To signal a right turn, push the lever forward (clockwise).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- To signal a left turn, pull the lever back (counterclockwise).
- Each time the turn indicator is activated the audible warning emits a short beep.

NOTE

If the vehicle turn signals and turn signal indicators in the dash gauge cluster ever begin flashing at an accelerated rate (115 cycles per minute) when the turn signal lever is in the OFF (center) position, or when a Right/Left turn has been selected, the problem may be related to a failed turn signal switch or turn signal module. In either case, the problem is not a failed bulb. Contact your nearest authorized dealer to have the problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING!

After you complete a turn, shut the system off by returning the lever to the "OFF" (center) position. Failure to shut off a turn signal could confuse other drivers and result in an injury accident. An indicator light in the instrument panel will flash until the turn signal is turned off.

High Beam

NOTE

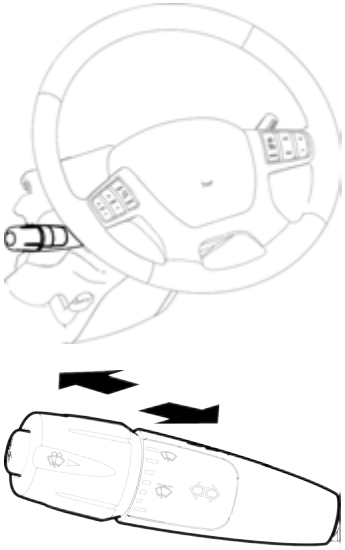
The headlights must be ON for the high beam switch to operate.

- To switch your headlights to lower or higher beam, gently pull the turn signal lever, toward the steering wheel, until you hear the switch click and the beam changes. The blue indicator light in the instrument panel will be ON when the high beam is being used.
- To return to previous beam: pull the lever towards the steering wheel again.
- The high beams can be momentarily flashed with or without the headlights being on. To flash the high beams, gently push the headlight lever away from the steering wheel to momentarily turn on the lights.

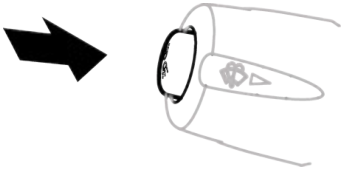
NOTE

Continued pressing of the high beam flash will not keep the high beams on.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Flash to pass



ID and Clearance Lights Flash

Windshield Wipers/Washer

Your vehicle is equipped with a two-speed, intermittent windshield wiper system. The windshield wiper system is integrated with the exterior lights so that the low beam headlights will turn on when the windshield wipers turn on.

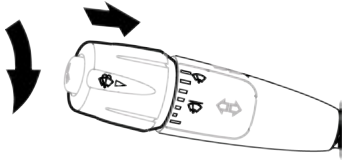
To override this function, turn the headlights on and then off again and the low beams will turn off. Permanently overriding this functionality is attainable via the Settings Menu in the instrument cluster display. Go to Settings - > Wiper Interlock and turn this value to OFF.

A seven-position rotary wiper switch (located on the turn signal lever) operates the windshield wipers and washer. Rotate the end of the turn signal lever to change the wiper mode.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

The ignition key must be turned to ON or ACC for the wiper/washer switches to operate.



Wiper/Washer

The first position after OFF is the intermittent #1 cycle. The next positions are intermittent #2, #3, and #4. The last two positions are wiper low speed and wiper high speed.

To wash the windshield

Push the rotary wash/wipe knob in (towards steering column), hold for more than 0.8 seconds and then release. Hold the knob in to extend the washing cycle. After the lever is released, the wipers will shut off automatically or resume the wiper's setting speed.

To activate the wipers for one swipe without activating the washer ("mist" function), push the turn signal lever in (towards the steering column) and release in less than 0.5 seconds. The wipers will perform a single swipe and then resume the wiper's setting speed.

WARNING!

Clean blades regularly with a damp cloth to remove road film and wax build-up. Do not drive with worn or dirty wiper blades. They can reduce visibility, making driving hazardous which may lead to an injury accident resulting in death or personal injury.

CAUTION

Do not use antifreeze or engine coolant in the windshield washer reservoir - damage to seals and other components will result.

CAUTION

If the electric pump is operated for a long period (more than 15 seconds) with a dry reservoir, the pump motor may be damaged.

Check the windshield washing fluid level daily. If necessary, fill to top.

Clean all inside and outside windows regularly. Use an alcohol-based cleaning solution and wipe dry with either a lint-free or a chamois cloth. Avoid running the wiper blades over a dry windshield to prevent scratching the glass. Spray on washer fluid first. A scratched windshield will reduce visibility.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

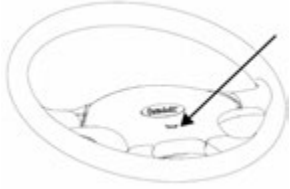
3. Trailer Brake Hand Valve

This hand valve, mounted on the steering wheel column, provides air pressure to apply the trailer brakes only. It operates independently of the foot treadle valve. See Using the Brake System on page 4-24, for more instructions on proper use of the Trailer Brake Hand Valve.

Horn

Electric Horn

Your Peterbilt has an electric horn. To operate, press on the horn symbol near the center of the steering wheel.



Air Operated Horn (Option)

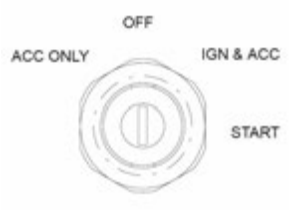
Your Medium Duty may be equipped with an air horn. To operate, pull on the lanyard extending from the overhead header panel.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

DASH- AND DOOR-MOUNTED CONTROLS

Ignition Switch

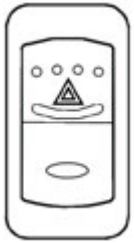
Your ignition switch has four (unmarked) positions:



1. **ACC (Accessory):** With your key in this position you can play the radio or use other accessories, but your engine won't start.
2. **OFF:** In this position all systems are off, and you can remove your key.
3. **IGN & ACC:** This position allows you to turn on the engine and all accessory power.
4. **START:** Starter activation to start engine.

Hazard Flasher

The four-way Emergency Flasher switch is located to the right of the ignition key switch. With the switch in the ON position, the emergency flasher makes all four turn signals (front and rear) flash simultaneously. The flasher works independently of the ignition switch. You should always use the flasher if the vehicle is disabled or parked under emergency conditions.



https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Use your Hazard Flasher Warning System any time you have to stop off the road or on the side of the road, day or night. A hard-to-see vehicle can result in an injury accident. Another vehicle could run into you if you do not set your flashers and follow the placement of emergency signals per FMCSR 392.22. Always move the vehicle a safe distance off the road when stalled or stopped for repairs. A disabled vehicle can be dangerous for you and others. The hot exhaust system could ignite dry grass, spilled fuel, or other substances. Do not park or operate your vehicle where the exhaust system could contact dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, or any other material that could cause a fire.

Daytime Running Lights

On vehicles equipped with the Daytime Running Light (DRL) system, the low beam headlights are turned ON automatically at reduced brightness (to conserve headlamp life).

If the headlight switch is turned OFF, the DRL system engages automatically after the engine starts and you release the parking brake. If the headlight switch is ON, the DRL system is overridden, and headlights operate normally.

WARNING!

Do not use daytime running lights (DRL) during periods of darkness or reduced visibility. Do not use DRL as a substitute for headlights or other lights during operations that require lighting of your vehicle. Doing so could lead to an injury accident.

CAUTION

On vehicles equipped with daytime running lights (DRL), the high-beam headlamps go on automatically at reduced brightness if the engine is running and the headlamp switch is turned off. The daytime running lights are turned off automatically while the parking brake is engaged. If the headlamp switch is turned on, the DRL system is overridden & headlamps operate normally.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

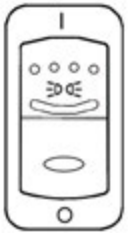
Panel Light Dimmer

The Panel Light Dimmer lets you vary the brightness of your instrument panel lights.

To Operate Your Panel Light Dimmer:

1. Turn on either the headlights or clearance lights.
2. To brighten the instrument lights, rotate the thumbwheel up.
3. To dim the instrument lights, rotate the thumbwheel down.

ID and Clearance Lights Switch



These are the amber lights on top of your cab, the lights on the front and sides of the trailer, and the red lights on the rear of a truck or trailer. They are controlled by the control panel switch labelled CL LPS or with the symbol shown above.

Dome Light

The center-mounted dome light is operated by gently pushing on the lens until a click is heard. The same action turns the light on or off, depending on its previous state.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fog Lights Switch

If your vehicle has fog lights, turn them ON or OFF with the control panel switch with the symbol shown above.

> **NOTE**
>
> Across the U.S.A. and Canada, State/Provincial requirements vary as to when high beams and fog lights can and cannot be used together. Some states allow only four lights to be used together, while some allow more. How your lights are arranged will affect whether you can operate headlights and fog lights concurrently—always comply with the state or provincial requirements where you are driving.

Air Suspension Deflate Switch (Dump Valve)

Your Peterbilt vehicle may have an air suspension deflation switch which allows the air in the suspension to be exhausted from a switch on the dash. The purpose of this feature is to allow you to lower your tractor to get under a trailer. You may notice a guard over the switch. This prevents you from accidentally deflating the suspension.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

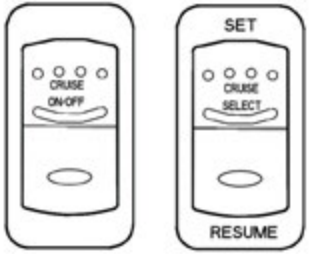
WARNING!

Operating the Air Suspension Deflate Switch (Dump Valve) while driving can lead to an accident. Sudden deflation while your vehicle is moving can affect handling and control. Use this switch only when your vehicle is not moving.

CAUTION

Operating a vehicle with air suspension bags either overinflated or underinflated may cause damage to driveline components. If a vehicle must be operated under such conditions, do not exceed 5 mph.

Cruise Control Switch



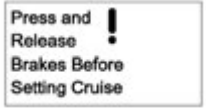
The master switch turns the cruise control ON or OFF. The second switch allows you to SET the desired speed or RESUME the desired speed after the cruise control function has been interrupted.

WARNING!

Do not operate the cruise control when operating on road surfaces with poor traction (wet, icy, or snow covered roads) or in heavy traffic. Accelerations caused by the normal operation of the cruise control could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an injury accident.

NOTE

Cruise control functions and features may vary depending upon which engine you have. For specific explanation of your cruise control, see the cruise control or engine manual included with your vehicle.

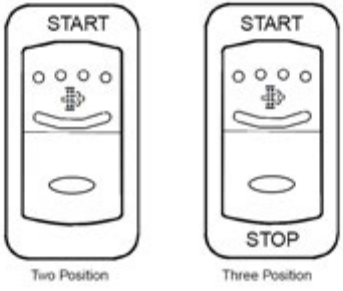


https://truckmanualshub.com/

This vehilcle's electronic system will perform a 'rationality check' every time the vehicle is started. This check is to ensure that the service brakes are working before allowing cruise control to function. This safety feature is designed to ensure that a driver is able to cancel the cruise set speed by using the service brake pedal. The system will not allow cruise control operation if it does not pass the 'rationality check'. The Driver Information Display will prompt you to press the service brake pedal if it has not been pressed since the vehicle has been started.

Regeneration Switch

In order to meet 2007 EPA engine emission requirements, vehicles will have a either a two or three position switch to help control and maintain the exhaust Diesel Particulate Filter. Please refer to the Exhaust Aftertreatment System Supplement provided with the vehicle for more detailed information about the emission control system.



START: Depressing the button in the START direction for 4 to 8 seconds will initiate a parked regeneration. Be sure to release the button to ensure that the system will begin the regeneration cycle.

CENTER: (three position switch only) Center is the normal position of the switch. The center position will allow an automatic regeneration to occur.

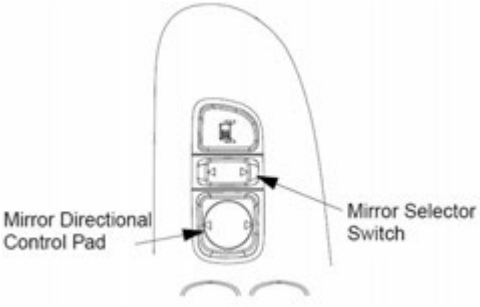
STOP: (three position switch only) When STOP is pressed the system will not regenerate under any conditions.

CAUTION
Do not leave the three position switch in the STOP position unless you need to cancel or stop regeneration. Leaving the switch in the STOP position for extended periods of time will result in increased soot levels in the DPF.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Power Mirror Switch

If your vehicle is equipped with power mirrors, the mirror controls will be located on the driver side door pad. Aerodynamic- style mirrors are controlled for 4-way adjustable movement, while Moto mirrors are controlled for 2-way adjustable movement.



WARNING!

Convex mirrors can distort images and make objects appear smaller and farther away than they really are. You could have an accident if you are too close to another vehicle or other object. Keep plenty of space between your vehicle and others when you turn or change lanes. Remember that other objects are closer than they may appear.

NOTE

The Power Mirror Switch does not control the adjustment of the convex mirrors.

To Adjust Moto Mirrors

1. Move the mirror selector switch to the right or left from the neutral center position to select the desired mirror for adjustment.

NOTE

If the mirror is fixed (non-motorized) on the left side, then the mirror selector switch will ONLY allow selection of the neutral and right mirror switch positions.

2. Depress the mirror directional control pad towards the arrows pointing left or right to adjust the mirror in/out.

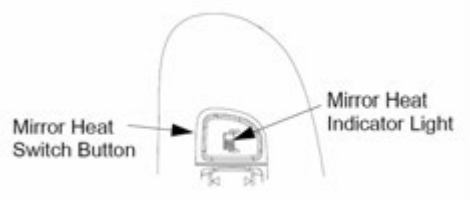
NOTE

After mirror adjustments have been completed, return the mirror selector switch back to the center (neutral) position, to prevent unintentional adjustments to the mirrors.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Mirror Heat Switch

Your vehicle may be equipped with optional heated mirrors. Mirror heat is controlled by the mirror heat switch button, which is part of the mirror switch module located on the driver side door pad. Motorized mirrors with mirror heat have an automatic 15-minute "time out" feature, where the mirror heat-only module is automatically deactivated.

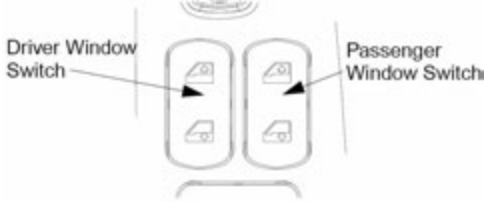


To defrost the mirrors in cold weather, depress the mirror heat switch button and release. The mirror heat symbol in the button will illuminate to indicate the mirror heat function has been activated. Pressing and releasing the button again turns the mirror heat and the indicator light Off.

NOTE
The effects of direct sunlight, or the use of mirror heat, will increase the outside air temperature displayed while the vehicle is stationary.

Power Window Switch

Your vehicle is probably equipped with power windows. Power window rocker switches are located on the door pads (a switch for the passenger window is also on the driver side door pad, as shown above).



To open or close a window, depress the switch for that window at the end that displays a downward- or upward-directed arrow, respectively, in the window symbol on the switch face. Release the switch to stop window movement.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

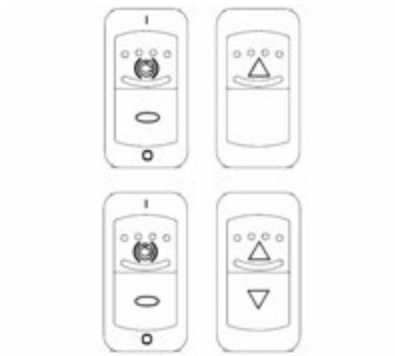
Power Door Lock Switch

Your vehicle is probably equipped with power door locks. Power door lock rocker switches are located on the door pads (switch on the driver side door pad is shown above).

To lock or unlock both cab doors as well as a sleeper door, depress any door lock switch at the end that displays a closed or open padlock symbol, respectively, on the switch face.

Jacobs Engine Brake or Cummins "C" Brake Switch

The ON/OFF switch turns the system ON or OFF. The second switch performs the progressive braking function that controls the amount of retarding.



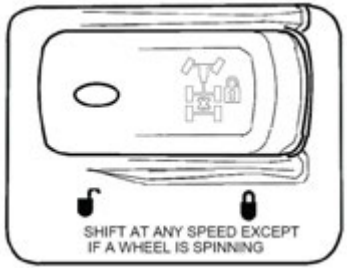
2-Mode and 3-Mode Systems

- If you have the two-mode system, you can select HIGH or LOW.
- If you have the three-mode system, you can select low, medium, or high retarding.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Interaxle Differential Lock Switch

The interaxle differential allows differential action between the forward rear and the rear rear driving axles. The interaxle differential lock switch allows the operator to LOCK or UNLOCK the differential. The guard over this switch prevents you from accidentally activating the lock.

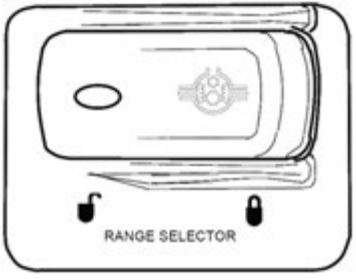


WARNING!

Placing the differential lock in the "LOCK" position while your wheels are spinning could cause loss of control or axle damage. You could be hurt. Switch to "LOCK" only when your wheels are not spinning.

See Interaxle Differential on page 4-47 for more information on using your interaxle differential.

Two-Speed Rear Axle (Range) Switch



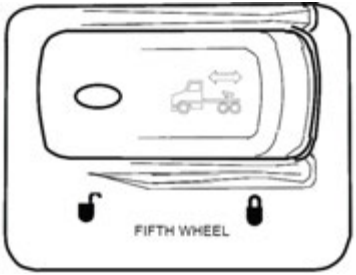
If your vehicle is equipped with a two-speed rear axle, you can select the axle range by the dash mounted switch shown above. The low range provides maximum torque for operating off-highway. The high range is a faster ratio for highway speeds.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fifth Wheel Lock (Slider Adjustment) Switch

WARNING!

Do not move the fifth wheel while the tractor-trailer is in motion. Movement of the fifth wheel while a tractor-trailer is moving can cause a serious accident. Your load could shift suddenly, causing you to lose control of the vehicle. Never operate the vehicle with the switch in the unlock position. Always inspect the fifth wheel after you lock the switch to be sure the fifth wheel is engaged.



Vehicles having an air slide fifth wheel have a fifth wheel slider lock controlled by a switch on the instrument panel. By placing the switch in the unlock position, you can slide the fifth wheel to various positions to adjust weight distribution. There is a guard over this switch to protect you against accidentally activating or releasing the lock.

Parking Brake Valve and Trailer Air Supply Valve

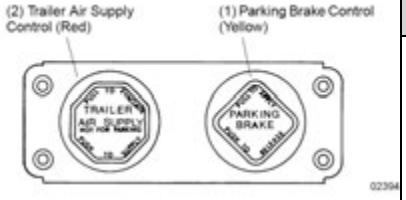
Before you leave the cab, apply all parking brakes.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Vehicles with Air Brakes:

1. Apply all parking brakes. Pull out the **Yellow** Parking Brake Control knob (1) located on the dash. In tractors, the **Red** (octagon-shaped) Trailer Air Supply Control knob (2) will automatically pop out.

Full Truck Parking Brake Valve



Combination (Tractor/Trailer) Parking Brake Control Valves

WARNING!

Do not leave the cab without applying the parking brake. The truck could roll and cause an injury accident. Always apply the parking brake before you leave the cab.

2. Shift the transmission into its PARK position.
3. Turn the key to OFF.
4. Remove the key.

WARNING!

Do not pull out the parking brake valve while the vehicle is moving. Stopping with the parking brake controls can cause a sudden wheel lock-up, loss of control, or over-take by following vehicles. You could be severely injured.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Vehicles with Hydraulic Brakes:

The parking brake consists of a driveline drum brake actuated by a lever and cable. The hand lever, mounted on the vehicle's cab floor, pulls or releases the cable controlling the brake. Pulling upward on the parking brake lever pulls the cable and expands the driveline brake shoes outward against the driveline brake drum.

The driveline brake is disengaged by pushing the handle downward to its lowest position.

> **NOTE**
>
> Failure to fully release the parking brake can cause the brakes to overheat.

> **CAUTION**
>
> Unless it is an emergency, do not pull upward on the parking brake lever while the vehicle is moving. Attempting to stop with the parking brake could cause damage to the driveline, transmission, or the parking brake mechanism itself.

Using the parking brake:

1. Come to a complete stop.

2. Apply the parking brake. Pull upward on the parking brake lever until it reaches an over (top) center position. (The PARK light on the dash will come on.)

> **NOTE**
>
> Ensure the lever is over center. The light will come on prior to brake being fully applied.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

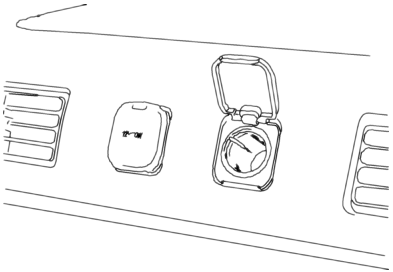
Power Port

Power ports are available in the cab to operate accessories. The 12 volt power circuit is protected by a 10-ampere fuse to prevent damage.

WARNING!

Do not exceed the voltage/amperage capacity of the cigarette lighter. It could result in a fire. Follow all warnings and instructions in the operator's manual for the appliance you are using.

The receptacle may be used to power auxiliary equipment not drawing more than 15 amperes maximum. While there are two receptacles at the top of the dashboard, there is one more on the base of the cup holders.



Cupholders/Ashtray

Your vehicle comes standard with two cupholders located in the center of the cab, below the dashboard. This vehicle may have an optional ashtray which is designed to fit into one cupholder.

WARNING!

Paper or other combustible substances in an ashtray could cause a fire. Keep all burnable materials besides smoking materials out of the ashtray.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

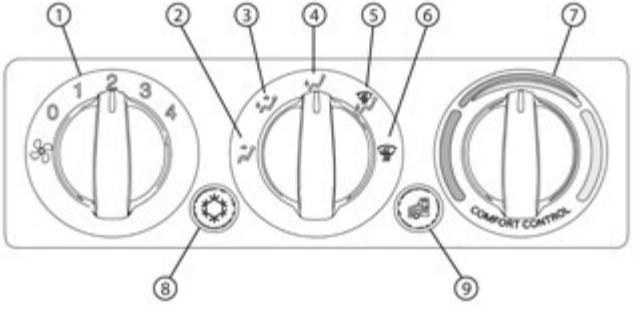
Shift Pattern Display

The correct shift pattern for your vehicle appears on your control panel or windshield or on a medallion in the shift knob. It is important that you know more about your transmission than just the shift pattern. Please read the manufacturer's manual that is included with your vehicle.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Cab Controls



1. Fan Control Dial
2. Dash
3. Dash & Floor
4. Floor
5. Floor & Defrost
6. Defrost
7. Temperature Control Dial
8. Air Conditioner Enable, Blue Light (On) Indicates A/C is Enabled
9. Fresh Air / Recirculate, Blue Light (On) Indicates Recirculated Air

Introduction

WARNING!

Do not drive with visibility reduced by fog, condensation, or frost on the windshield. Your view may be obscured, which may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage. For clear visibility and safe driving it is extremely important for you to follow the instructions pertaining to the function and use of the ventilation/heating and defogging/defrosting system. If in doubt, consult your dealer. Maximum heating output and fast defrosting can be obtained only after the engine has reached operating temperature.

WARNING!

Exhaust fumes from the engine contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. Do not breathe the engine exhaust gas. A poorly maintained, damaged or corroded exhaust system can allow carbon monoxide to enter the cab. Entry of carbon monoxide into the cab is also possible from other vehicles nearby. Failure to properly maintain your vehicle could cause carbon monoxide to enter the cab, resulting in death or personal injury.

WARNING!

Never idle your vehicle for prolonged periods of time if you sense that exhaust fumes are entering the cab. Investigate the cause of the fumes and correct it as soon as possible. If the vehicle must be driven under these conditions, drive only with the windows open. Failure to repair the source of the exhaust fumes may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

Keep the engine exhaust system and the vehicles cab ventilation system properly maintained. It is recommended that the vehicles exhaust system and cab be inspected:

- By a competent technician every 15,000 miles
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system
- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody, or cab is damaged

NOTE

To allow for proper operation of the vehicle ventilation system, keep the inlet grille at the base of the windshield clear of snow, ice, leaves and other obstructions at all times.

CAUTION

Do not stay in the vehicle with the engine running or idling for more than 10 minutes with the vehicle's Heater and A/C ventilation system in RECIRC or at LOW FAN SPEED. Even with the ventilation system on, running the engine while parked or stopped for prolonged periods of time is not recommended.

NOTE

When idling for short periods of time:

- Set the heating or cooling system to Heat or A/C
- Set the fan to Medium or High speed
- Set the controls to FRESH AIR

NOTE

If you are required to idle your vehicle for long periods of time, install an auxiliary heater or automatic idle control. These auxiliary devices can reduce fuel consumption and save you money.

NOTE

If you are parked next to idling vehicles, move your vehicle or do not stay in your vehicle for prolonged periods of time.

Manual Controls

What Each Control Does

Fan Speed Adjustment

Turning this dial clockwise from the OFF position turns the fan ON and increases the fan speed.

Air Flow Control Dial
This dial directs the air flow through 5 primary sets of vents:

Instrument Panel and De-mister Vents

Instrument Panel, De-mister and Floor Vents

Floor and De-mister Vents

Floor, De-mister Vents and *Defrost Vents

***Defrost and De-mister Vents**

*Fresh air and air conditioning are automatically turned ON.

Temperature Control Dial

Turn this dial clockwise for heat, counterclockwise for cool.

Air Conditioner Switch

This button turns the A/C compressor on and off. When using the Max Def function the user will not be able to turn off the AC compressor with this button.

NOTE
Fan Control Dial must also be in the ON position for A/C to be on. A/C engages automatically in AUTO, defrost and floor/de-frost.

3

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fresh Air/Recirculation Switch

This switch controls the source of the air flowing into the heater and air conditioner unit

Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior of the vehicle (when used with A/C) and may also help reduce undesired outside odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. This button can be engaged manually in any non-defrost modes.

NOTE
You may notice changes in sound between recirculated mode and other airflow modes.

Tips for Efficient Cooling

An air conditioner can reduce fog build up on the windshield by setting it to the defrost or the floor/defrost air selection. To increase the effectiveness of the air conditioner, use the A/C button in the ON position, increase the air temperature setting and/or increase the fan speed.

If the cabin becomes humid or damp, use the air conditioner with the fan on, with fresh air (not in recirculate air mode) and the A/C in the ON position to dry the cabin air.

In situations where more cooling of the cab is required, make sure the system is in the recirculation mode. This setting will be more effective than using fresh air.

How To Use The System

The engine must be running for the heater and air conditioner to generate hot and cold air.

To Cool

Push the Fresh Air/Recirculation Switch to the Fresh Air mode (Blue indicator light off). Manually setting the system to recirculate air will increase the effectiveness and uses the least amount of fuel.

Turn ON the Fan Control Dial to the desired fan speed.

Turn Temperature Dial to Desired Setting.

Turn the Air Flow Control Dial to Dash Vents.

If the outside air is not cold enough to cool the cab, press to engage the compressor which will deliver colder air.

For more cooling effect, you may need to press the switch back to recirculation mode.

To Heat

Turn the Fan Control Dial ON to the desired fan speed.

Turn the Air Flow Control Dial to Floor Vents.

Adjust the Temperature Control Dial clockwise until the air temperature feels comfortable.

Using this function in "manual" mode will provide the maximum heating performance.

To Dehumidify

Push the Fresh Air/Recirculate Switch to the Fresh Air mode (Blue indicator light off).

Turn ON the Air Conditioning Switch (Blue indicator light on).

Turn ON the Fan Control Dial to the desired fan speed.

Adjust the Temperature Control Dial until the air temperature feels comfortable.

The air conditioner removes moisture from the air while the heater heats the air.

To Defog and Defrost the Windshield

Turn the Fan Control Dial clockwise to the highest fan speed.

Turn the Air Flow Control Dial to Defrost Vents.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fresh air and air conditioning are automatically turned ON.

Adjust the Temperature Control Dial clockwise to full heat.

CAUTION
During extreme cold weather, do not blow hot defroster air onto cold windshields. This could crack the glass. Turn the Air Flow Control Dial to Defrost and adjust the fan speed accordingly while the engine warms. If the engine is already warm, move the Temperature Control Dial to cool, then gradually increase the temperature when you see that the windshield is starting to warm up. Failure to comply may result in equipment damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

ACCESSORIES

Navigation System

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Peterbilt Navigation System. This system is a Global Positioning Satellite (GPS)-linked computer. It receives input from multiple sources to locate your vehicle. Read and understand the Supplemental Navigation System Owner's Manual and observe the Warnings, Cautions, and Notes that follow before using the system.

WARNING!

Verify legal weight and height restrictions for the route suggested by the Navigation System. Failure to verify height restrictions could lead to personal injury. Failure to verify weight restrictions could result in a traffic infraction.

WARNING!

Only glance at the Navigation System monitor while driving. Prolonged periods of viewing while driving could result in an accident and possible personal injury.

WARNING!

Do not program the Navigation System while driving. Always stop your vehicle when programming or changing the settings on the Navigation System. Programming the system while driving can cause you to take your eyes off the road, which could result in an accident. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or equipment damage.

CAUTION

Do not rely on the Navigation System to route you to the closest emergency services. Not all emergency services are in the database.

NOTE

Regardless of how and where the navigation system directs you, it is your responsibility to operate the vehicle in a safe and legal manner.

NOTE

Ensure the volume level of all audio devices is set to a level that still allows you to hear outside traffic and emergency vehicles.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

The map database is the most current available at the time of production. The database is designed to provide you with route suggestions and does not take into account the relative safety of a suggested route or of factors that may affect the time required to reach your destination. See the Supplemental Navigation System Owner’s Manual for more information.

Radio

As an option, your vehicle has either an AM/FM Stereo Receiver or an AM/FM Stereo/Cassette Player.

For instructions on how to operate your particular radio, see the manufacturer's Radio Operating Instructions in the glove compartment.

Glove Compartment

A glove compartment is provided to store important documents, the vehicle literature set (including this Operator's Manual) and other related materials. You can open it by pushing the knob on the front.

- To close, push the cover up and press to latch it.
- You can lock and unlock the glove compartment door with your ignition key; turn it clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Do not drive with the glove compartment open, it can be dangerous. In an accident or sudden stop, you or a passenger could be thrown against the cover and be injured. To reduce the risk of personal injury during an accident or sudden stop, keep the glove compartment closed when the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING!

Do not carry loose objects in your cab, it can be dangerous. In a sudden stop, or even going over a bump in the road, they could fly through the air and strike you or a passenger. You could be injured or even killed. Secure all loose objects in the cab before moving the vehicle.

Vehicle Telematic System

Your vehicle may be equipped with an onboard telematics system. This system is a Global Positioning Satellite (GPS)-linked computer. It receives input from multiple sources to locate your vehicle. Read and understand the Supplemental Telematics and Navigation System Owner's Manual and observe the Warnings, Cautions, and Notes that follow before using the system.

WARNING!

Verify legal weight and height restrictions for the route suggested by the telematic system. Failure to verify height restrictions could lead to causing death, personal injury or property damage. Failure to verify weight restrictions could result in a traffic infraction.

WARNING!

Only glance at the system monitor while driving. Prolonged periods of viewing while driving could result in an accident involving death or personal injury.

WARNING!

Do not program the telematic system while driving. Always stop your vehicle when programming or changing the settings on the telematic system. Programming the system while driving can cause you to take your eyes off the road, which could result in an accident involving death, personal injury or equipment damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Regardless of how and where the navigation system directs you, it is your responsibility to operate the vehicle in a safe and legal manner. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Ensure the volume level of all audio devices is set to a level that still allows you to hear outside traffic and emergency vehicles. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Do not rely on the telematic system to route you to the closest emergency services. Not all emergency services are in the database.

NOTE

The map database is the most current available at the time of production. The database is designed to provide you with route suggestions and does not take into account the relative safety of a suggested route or of factors that may affect the time required to reach your destination. See the Supplemental Navigation System Owner's Manual for more information.

Care of the Display Screen

From time to time it may be necessary to clean the display screen. To clean the screen, dampen a clean, soft, lint-free cloth with water only. A mild glass cleaner **that does not contain alcohol or ammonia** may also be used. Cleaners that contain alcohol and/or ammonia will eventually dry-out, crack and "yellow" the screen. Wipe the screen gently back and forth. You can also use a commercial cleaner especially designed for LCD screens.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Screen Display On/Off

1. Press and hold the POWER/LIGHT button for approximately 1 second.

2. After the display has been turned on, the following Warning/Informational screen will appear:

Warning/Informational Screen

WARNING

Do not let this device distract you while driving. Always concentrate on your driving. Distractions could cause an accident resulting in injuries to you or others.

IMPORTANT

Disclaimer: Map data may be inaccurate and navigation routes may not be available for larger size vehicles.

Regardless of how and where the navigation system directs you, it is your responsibility to operate the vehicle in a safe and legal manner.

Note: Before using this system, read the Owner's Manual and learn how it operates. Some functions of this system will not operate when the truck is moving.

3. After reading the information, touch the **T** in the upper right corner of the screen with your finger indicating you acknowledge and understand the information. The MENU screen will automatically appear next.

4. To turn the system off, press and hold the POWER/LIGHT button for 3 seconds.

Disclaimer

The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for erroneous map data, misrouting or any downtime or other damages associated with or arising out of the use of the Navigation System.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

STARTING & OPERATING

Introduction 4-5
Normal Weather 4-5
Cold Weather 4-6
Engine Block Heater (Option). 4-6
Engine Warm-up 4-7

OPERATING THE ENGINE

Stationary PTO Operation 4-11
Engine Fan Control 4-11
Winterfronts 4-12
Engine Control Display 4-13

OPERATING THE TRANSMISSION

Introduction 4-14
Operating Manual Transmissions 4-14
Putting the Vehicle in Motion 4-19
Automatic and Automated Transmissions 4-22
Auxiliary Transmission. 4-23

More Transmission Tips 4-23

OPERATING THE BRAKE SYSTEM

Introduction 4-24
Hydraulic Brakes 4-35
Retarders 4-41
Parking Brake 4-43

CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise Control Switch 4-44

AXLE

Differential Lock 4-47
Dual Range (Two-Speed) Rear Axle 4-48
Auxiliary Axles - Pusher or Tag 4-50

SUSPENSION

Setting Ride Height 4-57
Driving with Deflated Air Springs 4-60

AFTER-TREATMENT SYSTEM

Introduction 4-61

DRIVING TIPS AND TECHNIQUES

Introduction 4-62
Coasting 4-62
Descending a Grade 4-63
Engine Overspeed 4-63
Fuel - Excess Consumption 4-64

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Before Stopping the Engine 4-67
Refueling 4-67
Refuel Before the Final Stop 4-68
Final Stop 4-69

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

STARTING & OPERATING

Introduction

Since each vehicle is custom-equipped, all engine operation instructions in this manual are general. You will want to consult the manual for your engine to find out details about your specific engine's needs. You may need to use a slightly different procedure from the one outlined here.

Below are instructions for both normal-temperature starting and cold-weather starting.

Normal Weather

When the outside temperature is above 50° F (10° C), you can use the following procedure.

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Put your main transmission in Neutral.
3. Disengage (depress) the clutch (with manual transmission).
4. Turn the key switch to ON.

CAUTION

Never operate the starter motor while the engine is running. The starter and flywheel gears could clash or jam, severely damaging them.

NOTE

Some starters are equipped with overcrank protection. Check the "Engine Operation and Maintenance Manual" for details.

5. Turn the ignition key to the START position. If the engine does not start within 30 seconds, release the ignition switch. To avoid overtaxing the starter motor or the batteries, don't use the starter for more than 30 seconds. Let the starter motor cool and the batteries recover for two minutes before trying again.
   If the engine still won't start after a couple of tries, check the fuel lines for possible fuel starvation or air leaks. Starting failure may mean fuel isn't reaching the injectors.
6. As soon as the engine starts, begin to watch the oil pressure gauge. Check your engine manufacturer's

https://truckmanualshub.com/

manual for the right pressure for your engine. If the oil pressure doesn't rise within a few seconds, stop the engine. Find out what is wrong before restarting the engine.

7. Slowly engage (release) the clutch after the engine has started.
8. Wait for the oil pressure gauge to reach normal operating pressure before operating the vehicle or idling faster than 1000 rpm.

Cold Weather

In cold weather, fast engine starting helps relieve the loads on the electrical system and cranking motor. Using the special cold starting equipment will help starting. If you follow a few simple guidelines, you will extend the service life of your engine.

- Keep the electrical system in top condition.
- Use the best quality fuel of the recommended grade.
- Use recommended engine lubricating oil.
- Fully depress the accelerator pedal after engaging the starter.
- For manual transmissions and auxiliary transmissions, leave the transmission in neutral and allow the transmission lubricating oil to warm up (approximately 3-5 minutes) before operating vehicle.

Engine Block Heater (Option)

To preheat the engine before starting, plug the optional engine block heater into a properly grounded AC electrical source. Do not start the engine with the heater plugged in.

WARNING!

Engine block heaters can cause fires which may result in death, injury and/or property damage if not properly maintained and operated. Regularly inspect the engine block heater wiring and connector for damaged or frayed wires. Do not use the heater if there are any signs of problems. Contact your authorized dealer or the manufacturer of the heater if you are in need of repairs or information.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

CAUTION
Always unplug heater before starting the engine. Damage to the cooling system could occur if the heater is not turned OFF (unplugged).

Depending on engine make, when the temperature falls below -10° F (-24° C), the block heater is required.

- Use a solution of half ethylene glycol antifreeze and half water for best heater performance. Do not exceed 65 percent concentration of antifreeze, as a shortened heater life will result. See Engine Cooling System on page 5-80, for more information.
- After servicing the cooling system, operate the vehicle for a day or two before using the heater. Trapped air inside the engine needs time to escape.

Engine Warm-up

Engine

The purpose of engine warm-up is to allow oil film to be established between pistons and liners, shafts and bearings while your engine gradually reaches operating temperature.

Warm-up Procedure

1. After you've started your engine, idle it at approximately 600 RPM while you check:
   a. oil pressure
   b. air pressure
   c. alternator output
2. After a few minutes of idling at 600 RPM, increase your idle speed to 900 or 1000 RPM. Continue your warm-up. This procedure allows oil to warm and flow freely while pistons, liners, shafts, and bearings expand slowly and evenly. In extremely cold temperatures, you may have to increase idle speed.

NOTE
In colder climates where the temperature is often below freezing, the warm-up for turbocharged engines is especially important. Chilled external oil lines leading to the turbocharger will slow the oil flow until the oil warms, reducing oil available for the bearings. Watch the engine oil temperature or pressure gauge for a warming trend before increasing engine idle speed (RPM).

3. Continue the engine warm-up until the coolant temperature reaches at least 130° F (54° C). At this temperature, you can use partial throttle. Wait until the coolant temperature is at least 160° F (71° C) before operating at full throttle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Exhaust fumes from the engine contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. A poorly maintained, damaged, or corroded exhaust system can allow carbon monoxide to enter the cab or sleeper. Failure to properly maintain your vehicle could cause carbon monoxide to enter the cab and cause death or personal injury.

WARNING!

Never idle your vehicle for prolonged periods of time if you sense that exhaust fumes are entering the cab. Investigate the cause of the fumes and correct it as soon as possible. If the vehicle must be driven under these conditions, drive only with the windows slightly open. Failure to repair the source of the exhaust fumes may lead to death or personal injury.

CAUTION

The use of a winterfront can result in excessive engine coolant, oil, and charge air (intake) temperatures, which can lead to overheating and possible engine damage. If you must use a winterfront:

- Refer to the "Engine Operation and Maintenance Manual" for operating restrictions and recommendations.
- Use only a winterfront available from your dealer that is compatible with an EPA-compliant engine cooling system. These winterfronts are specifically designed for use with new grill snap patterns.

NOTE

Keep the engine exhaust system and the vehicle's cab/sleeper ventilation system properly maintained. It is recommended that the vehicle's exhaust system and cab/sleeper be inspected:

- By a competent technician every 15,000 miles
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system
- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody, cab or sleeper is damaged

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

- Do not stay in the vehicle with the engine running or idling for more than 10 minutes with the vehicle's Heater and A/C ventilation system in RECIRC or at LOW FAN SPEED. Even with the ventilation system On, running the engine while parked or stopped for prolonged periods of time is not recommended.
- If other vehicles are parked next to you idling, move your vehicle or do not stay in your vehicle for prolonged periods of time.

WARNING!

To reduce the chance of death or personal injury and/or vehicle damage from overheated engines, which can result in a fire, never leave the engine idling without an alert driver present. If the engine should overheat, as indicated by the engine coolant temperature light, immediate action is required to correct the condition. Continued unattended operation of the engine, even for a short time, may result in serious engine damage or a fire.

CAUTION

Do not allow your engine to idle, at low rpms (400–600 rpm), longer than five minutes. Long periods of idling after the engine has reached operating temperatures can decrease engine temperature and cause gummed piston rings, clogged injectors, and possible engine damage from lack of lubrication. The normal torsional vibrations generated can also cause transmission wear.

Idling the Engine

Under most circumstances, idling your engine for long periods merely wastes fuel. In severe arctic weather conditions, however, you may need longer idling to be sure all parts of your engine are fully lubricated.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Transmission

In cold weather (below 32° F (0° C), you may find shifting sluggish when you first start up. Transmission warm-up is especially important at this time, but it is always a good idea to warm-up your transmission before starting out on the road. To warm-up the transmission, follow these procedures.

To warm-up the transmission lubricating oil during engine warm-up, with a single transmission (manual and automatic):

1. Put the transmission in Neutral.
2. Release the clutch pedal (manual only) and operate the transmission in neutral for 3 to 5 minutes prior to operating the transmission in either forward or reverse range.
3. If you have a two-transmission combination:
   a. Put the main transmission in gear.
   b. Put the auxiliary transmission in Neutral. This will allow the transmission countershaft to turn, agitating the oil and warming it.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

OPERATING THE ENGINE

Stationary PTO Operation

The cruise control buttons for this vehicle may be used to control the engine rpm when the vehicle is stationary and the operator wants to use the PTO on the engine. Use the cruise control options in the same manner as with the vehicle in motion, but instead of setting vehicle speed, the engine speed (RPM) is set instead.

Setting Idle Speed

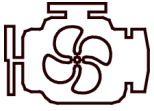
1. Ensure parking brakes are applied.
2. Ensure transmission is in Neutral.
3. Engage PTO per the manufacturer's operating instructions.
4. Move the ON/OFF switch to the "ON" position.
5. Toggle the SET/RESUME switch to obtain the desired engine rpm.

Cancelling Cruise Control

You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake pedal.
- Tap the clutch pedal.
- Move the ON/OFF switch to the "OFF" position.

Engine Fan Control



The engine fan can be turned ON using a switch that is mounted on the accessory switch panel. This lets you set the fan to manual or automatic operation.

- With the ignition key turned ON and the fan switch in the MANUAL position, the engine fan will be ON regardless of engine temperature.
- With the engine fan switch in the AUTO position, the engine fan will automatically turn ON when the engine computer sends a signal requiring the engine fan to be on.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Do not work on or near the fan with the engine running. Anyone near the engine fan when it turns on could be injured. If it is set at MANUAL, the fan will turn on any time the ignition key switch is turned to the ON position. In AUTO, it could engage suddenly without warning. Before turning on the ignition or switching from AUTO to MANUAL, be sure no workers are near the fan.

CAUTION

The fan or equipment near it could be damaged if the fan turns on suddenly when you do not expect it. Keep all tools and equipment away from the fan.

NOTE

Do not operate the engine fan in the MANUAL position for extended periods of time. The fan hub was designed for intermittent operation. Sustained operation will shorten the fan hub's service life as well as reduce fuel economy.

Winterfronts

A winterfront or other air flow restriction device may be mounted in front of the radiator to increase cab heater temperature in cold climates.

CAUTION

A winterfront should only be used at temperatures below 40°F (4°C). Use of a winterfront above 40°F (4°C) can decrease life of cooling module components. Remove winterfront as soon as the ambient temp reaches 41°F (5°C). The use of a winterfront above 40°F (4°C) can result in excessive engine coolant, oil, and charge air (intake) temperatures, which can lead to overheating and possible engine or coolant module damage and emissions non-compliance.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

The winterfront is designed to minimize the temperature differences across the radiator and reduce the possibility of cooling module damage. Aftermarket winterfronts may not provide the proper airflow distribution and could cause cooling module damage.

Engine Control Display

Your vehicle may come with an optional Engine and Driver Information Display. This instrument records information on engine diagnostics, scheduled maintenance, driving conditions, and general trip information. The specific features of your display may vary depending on engine make. For complete information on the display see the engine manufacturer's manual.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

OPERATING THE TRANSMISSION

Introduction

Your Medium Duty is equipped with either a manual or automatic transmission with special features and gearing to meet your particular needs. It is important for you, the driver, to understand how your particular transmission is operated. To do this, you have two sources of information: this Operator's Manual and the transmission manufacturer's Driver/Operator's Instruction Manual. Because of the variety of different transmissions installed in Medium Duty vehicles, operating procedures for your particular transmission are not included in this manual; therefore, you should read and understand both manuals. Read the general guidelines and instructions that follow and read the specific instructions contained in the transmission manufacturer's manual that is included with your vehicle.

NOTE
You will find a shift pattern diagram in the cab. Check to be sure you know the correct sequence for your particular transmission.

Operating Manual Transmissions

6, 9, 10, and 11–Speed Manual

The 6–speed synchronized manual transmission has 6 forward speeds and 1 reverse. The 9–speed transmission has 9 forward and 2 reverse speeds, consisting of a 5– speed low range section and a 4–speed high range section.

For specific instructions on operating one of the optional 10- or 11-speed transmissions, consult the transmission manufacturer’s Driver/Operator Instruction Manual.

Transmission Warm–Up

In cold weather [below 32°F (0°C)], you may find shifting sluggish when you first start up. Transmission warm-up is especially important at this time, but it is always a good idea to warm your transmission oil before starting out on the road.

To warm the transmission lubricating oil during engine warm-up:

1. Put the transmission in Neutral.
2. Release the clutch pedal and let the transmission operate in Neutral for three to five minutes prior to shifting into either a forward or reverse range.

Putting the Vehicle in Motion

After making sure the vehicle's oil and air pressure are correct and all other parts and systems are in proper working condition:

1. If your truck is equipped with a hand throttle, disengage the hand throttle before driving the vehicle.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal until the clutch brake makes contact. The contact will occur at about 1 inch or less from the floorboard.
   - The total stroke of the clutch pedal is about 10 inches. The first 1½ inches is free travel. After the free travel comes the release stroke, which is the part that fully releases the clutch. The last inch engages the clutch brake.
   - Always start out in a low gear. Starting in a higher gear, even with a light load, will cause a very jumpy start and excessive wear.

CAUTION

Always use first gear or a low speed range to start the vehicle in motion. The use of a higher gear or speed range forces undue strain on the engine, clutch, other transmission components, and may cause damage.

3. Evaluate the road surface conditions and terrain your vehicle is on. Select a gear low enough to let your vehicle start forward with the throttle at idle.
4. Push the parking brake valve handle (Yellow) against the dash panel to release the brakes.
5. Release the clutch pedal, then gradually accelerate to permit smooth starting,
6. Do not allow your vehicle to roll (even a little) in the

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

opposite direction during clutch engagement. If you need to start up on an incline, apply your service brakes before you release the parking brake. Then release your service brakes as you engage the clutch and apply throttle.

For further instructions on operating your transmission, see the transmission manufacturer's manual that is included with your vehicle.

If you have a misaligned gear condition in your vehicle's transmission and cannot start, gradually release the clutch, allowing the drive gear teeth to line up properly. Then the drive gear can roll enough to allow the teeth to line up properly and complete the shift.

The best engine performance and maximum economy is obtained if gears are properly selected. This efficiency is achieved by always selecting gears within optimum engine rpm, which is where maximum torque and power are obtained. For further information, see More Driving Tips and Techniques on page 4-62.

Shifting Gears in a New Vehicle

Shift carefully in a new vehicle. The transmission may be a little stiff at first. Avoid gear clashing by closely following these procedures.

When you are operating a new vehicle or one that has been exposed to cold weather, you want the transmission lubricant (fluid) to circulate and coat the contacting surfaces of the gears. Metal contacting metal in moving parts may seriously damage your transmission—do not drive in one gear for long periods of time until the transmission lubricant has a chance to coat all contacting surfaces. Carefully observe the free travel in the clutch for the first few hundred miles. As the clutch lining wears and high spots get worn smooth, you will get less free travel.

Clutch Brake and Travel (9–, 10–, and 11–Speed Transmissions only)

These transmissions utilize a clutch brake, rather than synchronizers. The clutch brake works by stopping all of the gears in the transmission, allowing you to easily shift into first gear or reverse without grinding gears. The total stroke of the clutch pedal is about 10 inches. The first part is the release stroke: the part that fully releases the clutch. The last inch engages the clutch brake.

During hard-shifting with vehicle not moving

- To apply the clutch brake (while the vehicle is stopped) fully depress the clutch pedal to the floorboard to stop the gears. With the throttle at idle, select first gear then release the clutch pedal to let the vehicle start forward, until the clutch is fully engaged. See the transmission manufacturer's manual that is included with your vehicle for further details.

During Normal Driving

If you want to shift directly into any gear other than first or reverse, depress the clutch pedal only far enough to release the clutch. Pushing the clutch to the floor applies the clutch brake and could cause gear hang-up.

> **CAUTION**
>
> Be careful not to apply the clutch brake while the vehicle is moving. The purpose of the clutch brake is to stop the transmission so that you can shift into a starting gear without grinding gears. Applying the clutch brake when the vehicle is moving causes a braking effect on the drive-train and shortens the service life of the clutch brake.

Double Clutching

Whether you are upshifting or down shifting, it is best to double clutch. Double clutching is easier on the transmission and on the engine, helping your vehicle match engine speed with driveline speed and achieving clash-free shifts. To double clutch:

1. Push the clutch pedal down to disengage the clutch.
2. Move the gear shift lever to Neutral.
3. Release the pedal to engage the clutch. This lets you control the rpm of the mainshaft gears, allowing you to match the rpm of the mainshaft gears to those of the output shaft.
   - Upshifts: let the engine and gears slow down to the rpm required for the next gear.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Downshifts: press accelerator, increase engine and gear speed to the rpm required in the lower gear.

4. Now quickly press the pedal to disengage the clutch and move the gear shift lever to the next gear speed position.
5. Release the pedal to engage the clutch.

"Riding" the Clutch

The clutch is not a footrest. Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. It will allow your clutch to slip, causing excessive heat and wear—damage could result.

Release Bearing Wear

When you must idle your engine for any period of time, shift your transmission to Neutral and disengage the clutch (take your foot OFF of the pedal). This helps prevent unnecessary wear to your clutch release bearing, and it is less tiring for you, too.

Clutch Adjustment

Inspect manual clutches according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Regular maintenance should be followed to maintain correct clutch adjustment. Have your dealer's Service Department perform any adjustment necessary.

Tips

- Always use the clutch when making upshifts or downshifts.
- Always select a starting gear that will provide sufficient gear reduction for the load and terrain.
- Never downshift when the vehicle is moving too fast.
- Never slam or jerk the shift lever to complete gear engagement.
- Never coast with the transmission in Neutral and the clutch disengaged.
- To provide smooth gear engagements while shifting, use proper coordination between shift lever and clutch.

Putting the Vehicle in Motion

After making sure the vehicle's oil and air pressure are correct and all other parts and systems are in proper working condition:

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal (for manual transmission) until the clutch brake makes contact.
   a. The total stroke of the clutch pedal is about 6 inches (152 mm). The first ½ inch (13 mm) is free travel. After the free travel comes the release stroke, which is the part that fully releases the clutch. The last ½ inch (13 mm) engages the clutch brake.
   b. Always start out in a low gear. Starting in higher gears, even with a light load, will cause a very jumpy start and excessive wear.

> **CAUTION**
>
> Always use first gear or a low speed range to start the vehicle in motion. The use of a higher gear or speed range forces undue strain on the engine, clutch, other transmission components, and may cause damage.

2. Evaluate the road surface conditions and terrain your vehicle is on. Select a gear low enough to let your vehicle start forward with the throttle at idle.
3. Push the parking brake valve handle (Yellow) against the dash panel to release the brakes.
4. Release the clutch pedal (manual only), then gradually accelerate to permit smooth starting,
5. Do not allow your vehicle to roll (even a little) in the opposite direction during clutch engagement. If you need to start up on an incline, apply your service brakes before you release the parking brake. Then release your service brakes as you engage the clutch and apply throttle.

For further instructions on operating your transmission, see the transmission manufacturer's Driver/Operator's Instruction Manual.

If you have a misaligned gear condition in your vehicle's transmission and cannot start, gradually release the clutch, allowing the drive gear teeth to line up properly. Then the drive gear can roll enough to allow the teeth to line up properly and complete the shift.

The best engine performance and maximum economy is obtained if gears are properly selected. This efficiency is achieved by always selecting gears within optimum engine RPM, which is where maximum torque and power are obtained. For further information, see

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

More Driving Tips and Techniques on page 4-62.

Shifting Gears in a New Vehicle

Shift carefully in a new vehicle. The transmission may be a little stiff at first. Avoid gear clashing, by closely following these procedures.

When you are operating a new vehicle or one that has been exposed to cold weather, you want the transmission lubricant (fluid) to circulate and coat the contacting surfaces of the gears. Metal contacting metal in moving parts may seriously damage your transmission, do not drive in one gear for long periods of time until the transmission lubricant has a chance to coat all contacting surfaces.

Clutch Brake and Travel

The clutch brake is used for stopping transmission gears, allowing you to easily shift into first gear or reverse without grinding gears. Approximately the last ½ inch (13 mm) of clutch pedal travel activates the clutch brake.

To apply the clutch brake (while the vehicle is stopped) fully depress the clutch pedal to stop the gears. With the throttle at idle, select first gear then release the clutch pedal to let the vehicle start forward, until the clutch is fully engaged. See the manufacturer's Driver/Operator's Instruction Manual for further details.

If the transmission has a butt-tooth condition and you cannot engage a gear, gradually release the clutch. Then the drive gear can roll enough to allow the teeth to line up properly and complete the shift.

During Normal Driving

If you want to shift directly into any gear other than first or reverse, depress the clutch pedal only far enough to release the clutch. Fully depressing the pedal applies the clutch brake and could cause gear hang-up.

CAUTION

Be careful not to apply the clutch brake while the vehicle is moving. The purpose of the clutch brake is to stop the transmission so that you can shift into a starting gear without grinding gears. Applying the clutch brake when the vehicle is moving will render the clutch inoperative.

Double Clutching

Whether you are upshifting or down shifting, it is best to double clutch. Double clutching is easier on the transmission and on the engine, helping your vehicle match engine speed with driveline speed and achieving clash-free shifts.

To double clutch:

1. Push the clutch pedal down to disengage the clutch.
2. Move the gear shift lever to neutral.
3. Release the pedal to engage the clutch. This lets you control the RPM of the mainshaft gears, allowing you to match the RPM of the mainshaft gears to those of the output shaft.
   a. Upshifts: let the engine and gears slow down to the RPM required for the next gear.
   b. Downshifts: press accelerator, increase engine and gear speed to the RPM required in the lower gear.
4. Now quickly press the pedal to disengage the clutch and move the gear shift lever to the next gear speed position.
5. Release the pedal to engage the clutch.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

Automatic and Automated Transmissions

An automatic or automated transmission makes shifting much easier. It remains important to completely understand how to operate the transmission to optimize its efficiency. Please read the manual for your automatic or automated transmission included with your vehicle.

For automated transmissions, there is no "park" position. So you will need to apply the parking brake before leaving the cab.

Hill Hold

The hill hold feature is available as an option with certain automated transmissions. This feature holds the vehicle while on a hill to allow the operator to release the service brakes and press the accelerator. This feature will hold the vehicle if the vehicle is attempting to go up a hill from a stop in either drive or reverse.

WARNING!

Do not leave the cab of your vehicle without applying the parking brake. The truck could roll and cause an accident resulting in death or personal injury. Always apply the parking brake before you leave the cab.

WARNING!

If your vehicle has an automated transmission, be aware that it can roll backwards when stopped on a hill or grade, or when starting from a stop on a hill or grade. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage. Observe the following guidelines:

- When stopped on a hill or grade, press the brake pedal.
- When starting from a stop on a hill or grade, quickly remove your foot from the brake pedal and firmly press on the accelerator pedal.

Auxiliary Transmission

If you have an auxiliary transmission, see your transmission manufacturer's manual for its proper operation.

More Transmission Tips

Riding the Clutch

The clutch is not a footrest. Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. It will allow your clutch to slip, causing excessive heat and wear, damage could result.

Release Bearing Wear

When you must idle your engine for any period of time, shift your transmission to neutral and disengage the clutch (take your foot OFF of the pedal). This helps prevent unnecessary wear to your clutch release bearing, and it is less tiring for you, too.

Tips

- Always use the clutch when making upshifts or downshifts.
- Always select a starting gear that will provide sufficient gear reduction for the load and terrain.
- Never downshift when the vehicle is moving too fast.
- Never slam or jerk the shift lever to complete gear engagement.
- Never coast with the transmission in neutral and the clutch disengaged.
- To provide smooth gear engagements while shifting, use proper coordination between shift lever and clutch.

Double clutching is a very effective means to increase the service life of your transmission. Double clutching refers to a technique where the clutch pedal is used twice per shift instead of once. It also requires that you adjust the engine rpm in the middle of the shift which ultimately synchronizes the gears during shifting. Synchronizing reduces wear on the gears.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

OPERATING THE BRAKE SYSTEM

Introduction

This vehicle's brake system functions with the use of compressed air generated from the engine's air compressor. The compressed air is stored in various air tanks to ensure that air pressure is available whenever the driver needs it.

Compressed air is delivered to the brake system through the valve at the brake pedal and is controlled with various valves and braking circuits. The brake system is designed with separate front, rear and (when applicable) trailer circuits so that if one circuit is compromised and loses air, the other circuits will not be affected. Safety valves in each circuit will protect the other circuits in the event that a circuit loses air.

The air compressor on the engine will typically provide 100-130 psi (690-896 kPa) to the air tanks. The vehicle is also designed with an air dryer, which removes moisture from the compressed air in order to protect all components in the air system.

The brake system may be further enhanced by additional devices such as brake proportioning valves, Anti-lock braking systems or sensors designed to let you know if your brake pads need to be serviced.

Certain conditions may result in the brake surfaces getting wet. Brake surfaces that are wet do not perform as well as when they are dry. There may be situations where wet brake surfaces cannot be avoided. In such situations, apply the brakes while in motion, to dry the brake surfaces.

Certain conditions may result in your brake surfaces becoming overheated (above 800° F or 427° C). Overheated brakes will damage linings and drum surfaces, ultimately decreasing braking performance. Refer to Retarders and Descending a grade to avoid overheating the brakes.

This vehicle may be equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS). This ABS reduces the possibility of wheel lock-up. If a wheel is about to lock during braking, the ABS will automatically adjust air pressure to the brake chambers on the appropriate wheel(s) to prevent wheel lock-up. The ABS is automatically turned on when the ignition switch is turned on.

WARNING!

The Anti-Lock Brake System is a critical vehicle safety system. For the safety of you and others around you, have the vehicle submitted for periodic preventive maintenance checks as well as having any suspected problems immediately checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to properly maintain your brake system can lead to serious accidents. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Do not drive through water deep enough to wet brake components, as it may cause the brakes to work less efficiently than normal. The vehicle's stopping distance may be longer than expected, and the vehicle may pull to the left or right when brakes are applied, which could contribute to an accident involving death or personal injury.

WARNING!

Do not rely on an anti-lock brake system that is functioning improperly. You could lose control of the vehicle resulting in a severe accident, causing death or personal injury. If your ABS lamp goes on while you are driving or stays on after the self-check, your anti-lock system might not be working. The ABS may not function in an emergency. You will still have conventional brakes, but not anti-lock brakes. If the lamp indicates a problem, have the ABS checked.

Vehicles without anti-lock brake systems (ABS) are typically equipped with a bobtail brake proportioning system. When a trailer is not connected, the drive axle brake application pressure will automatically be limited by the proportioning system. When driven in a bobtail mode,

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

these tractors will require greater brake pedal application to provide the equivalent braking to a bobtail tractor not equipped with a proportioning system.

Trailer ABS
Power Line Communication (PLC)

North American on-highway vehicles are equipped with a separate electrical circuit to power the anti-lock brake system (ABS) on towed vehicle(s). In most cases, the ABS power will be supplied through the Auxiliary circuit on the primary 7-way trailer light line connector. If the vehicle was manufactured with a switchable Auxiliary circuit for trailer accessories, an additional 7-way connector would have been provided for trailer ABS power. In either case, the ABS power line on the vehicle will be PLC equipped.

CAUTION

Do not splice into the non-switchable Auxiliary circuit on the primary 7-way trailer light line. Doing so may cause the trailer ABS to malfunction. This circuit is dedicated for trailer ABS power. To add a switchable auxiliary circuit, contact a dealership.

Vehicles and trailers built after 3/1/01 must be able to turn on an In-Cab Trailer ABS Warning Lamp (per Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) 121). The industry chose Power Line Communication (PLC) as the standard method to turn it on.

NOTE

Trailers not equipped with PLC can not turn on the In-Cab Trailer ABS Warning Lamp.

NOTE

For doubles or triples, the lamp does not distinguish between trailers. An ABS problem in any of the trailers will activate the Trailer ABS Warning Lamp.

NOTE

If you change the intended service in any way (i.e. number of axles, multiple trailers, add switchable trailer accessories, etc.) from the date the vehicle was manufactured, you should contact your trailer manufacturer and/or trailer anti-lock brake manufacturer to determine if the power available at the 7-way trailer light line is adequate. Failure to do so might result in insufficient power to the trailer ABS system which may affect its operation.

CAUTION

The center pin of the 7-way trailer light line may be constantly powered for ABS. Make sure it will not accidently turn on trailer equipment.

Special Trailer ABS (Without PLC) Option

If a trailer does not have PLC, **but** it does have ABS that is powered through an optional second trailer connector (ISO 3731) and that trailer ABS is designed to control the Trailer ABS Warning Lamp in the cab **and** the vehicle has been ordered with the option to turn on this lamp for these types of trailers, **then** this lamp will turn on when that trailer ABS has a system problem. This should be checked by a dealer as soon as possible. The Trailer ABS Warning Lamp will not turn on for the power-on test when connected to these types of trailers.

NOTE

Very few trailers built before 3/1/01 have this option. Trailers built after 3/1/01 are built with PLC technology.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

Advanced ABS with Stability Control

This vehicle may be equipped with Electronic Stability Control (ESC). ESC is a feature for ABS-equipped vehicles that reduces the risk of rollovers, jackknifing and other loss of control situations. ESC features include Roll Stability Program (RSP) and Yaw Control.

During operation, the ECU of the ESC system constantly compares performance models to the vehicle's actual movement, using the wheel speed sensors of the ABS system, as well as lateral, yaw, and steering angle sensors. If the vehicle shows a tendency to leave an appropriate travel path, or if critical threshold values are approached, the system will intervene to assist the driver.

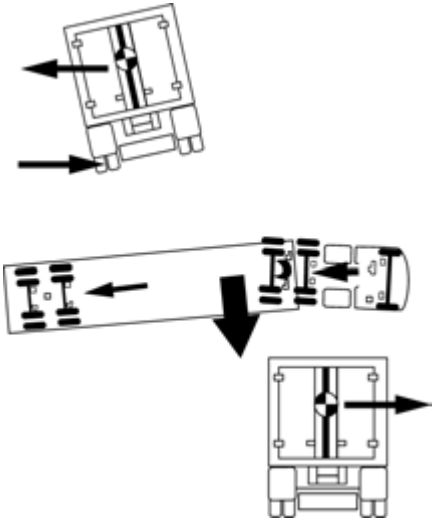
Roll Stability Program

RSP, an element of the overall ESC system, addresses rollover conditions. In the case of a potential roll event, the ECU will override the throttle and quickly apply brake pressure at all wheel ends to slow the vehicle combination. The level of braking application during an RSP event will be proportional to roll risk.

A Real World Example of How the RSP System Operates

Excessive speed for road conditions creates forces that exceed the threshold at which a vehicle is likely to rollover on a higher-friction surface.

The system automatically reduces engine torque and applies the service brakes (based on the projected rollover risk) to reduce the vehicle speed, thereby reducing the tendency to roll over.



RSP Example

Yaw Stability

Yaw stability counteracts the tendency of a vehicle to spin about its vertical axis. During operation, if the friction between the road surface and the tires is not sufficient to oppose lateral (side) forces, one or more of the tires can slide, causing the truck/tractor to spin.

These yaw events are referred to as either "under-steer" (where there is a lack of vehicle response to steering input due to tire slide on the steer axle) or "over-steer" (where the tractor's rear end slides out due to tire slide on the rear axle) situation. Generally, shorter wheelbase vehicles (tractors, for instance) have less natural yaw stability, while longer wheelbase vehicles (straight trucks, for instance) have greater natural yaw stability. Factors that influence yaw stability are: wheelbase, suspension, steering geometry, weight distribution front to rear, and vehicle track width.

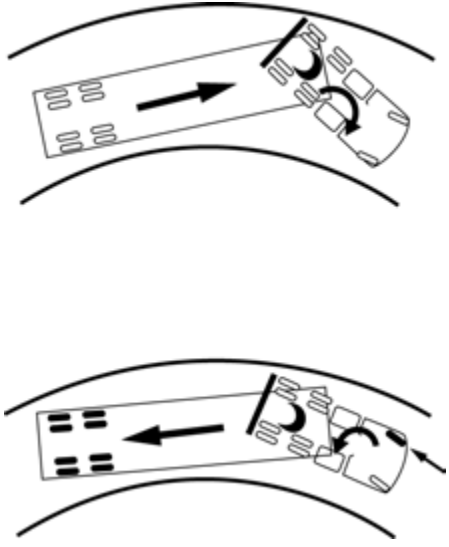
Yaw Control

Yaw Control responds to a wide range of low- to high-friction surface scenarios including rollover, jackknife and loss of control. In the case of vehicle slide (over-steer or understeer situations), the system will reduce the throttle and then brake one or more of the "four corners" of the vehicle (in addition to potentially applying the trailer brakes), thus applying a counter-force to better align the vehicle with an appropriate path of travel. For example, in an over-steer situation, the system applies the "outside" front brake; while in an under-steer condition, the "inside" rear brake is applied.

A Real World Example of How Yaw Control Operates

Excessive speed exceeds the threshold, creating a situation where a vehicle is likely to spin and jackknife.

The Bendix® Yaw Control system reduces engine throttle and selectively applies brakes to reduce the vehicle speed, thereby reducing the tendency to jackknife.



Yaw Control Example

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

ESC May Reduce The Vehicle Speed Automatically

To minimize unexpected deceleration and reduce the risk of a collision the operator must:

- Avoid aggressive driving maneuvers, such as sharp turns or abrupt lane changes at high speeds, which might trigger the stability system.
- Always operate the vehicle safely, drive defensively, anticipate obstacles and pay attention to road, weather and traffic conditions. ABS, ATC and ESC systems are no substitute for prudent, careful driving.

Towing Doubles Or Triples May Reduce The Effectiveness Of Stability Systems

ESC is designed and optimized for trucks and for tractors that tow single trailers. If a tractor equipped with ESC is used to power multiple trailer combinations (known as "doubles" or "triples") the effectiveness of the ESC system may be greatly reduced.

WARNING!

Exercise extreme care when towing doubles or triples with a vehicle equipped with Electronic Stability Control. Excessive speed and aggressive maneuvers, such as sharp turns, sudden steering inputs or abrupt lane changes should be avoided because these maneuvers could cause loss of vehicle control possibly resulting in an accident involving death or personal injury.

Limitations Of Stability Systems

The ESC system's effectiveness may be greatly reduced if:

- The load shifts due to improper retention, accident damage or the inherently mobile nature of some loads (for example, hanging meat, live animals or partially laden tankers),
- The vehicle has an unusually high or off-set center of gravity (CG),
- One side of the vehicle drops off the pavement at an angle that is too large to be counteracted by a reduction in speed,
- The vehicle is used to haul double or triple trailer combinations,
- If very rapidly winding steering inputs are inputted at high speeds,
- There are mechanical problems with suspension leveling of the

tractor or trailer resulting in uneven loads,

- The vehicle is maneuvering on a high banked road creating either additional side forces due to the weight (mass) of the vehicle or a deviation between expected & actual yaw rates,
- Gusty winds are strong enough to cause significant side forces on the vehicle and any towed vehicles.

To Maximize The Effectiveness Of ESC

- Loads must be properly secured and evenly distributed at all times.
- Drivers need to exercise extreme caution at all times, and avoid sharp turns, sudden steering inputs or abrupt lane changes at high speeds, particularly if:
  a. the vehicle hauls loads that could shift,
  b. the vehicle or load has a high or off-set center of gravity (CG) when loaded, or
  c. the vehicle tows doubles or triples.

Truck Chassis Modifications

The ESC system was specifically calibrated and validated only for your vehicle's original factory-built configuration. If your vehicle's chassis components are altered (for example; a wheelbase extension or reduction, tag axle addition or removal, tractor to truck conversion or steering system component change) the ESC system must be disabled immediately by a qualified mechanic.

WARNING!

Failure to disable ESC "Electronic Stability Control" when modifying a vehicle could result in a loss of vehicle control possibly resulting in an accident involving death or personal injury.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

For vehicles equipped with ESC "Electronic Stability Control" do not replace the vehicle's steering wheel with an aftermarket or different part number than originally supplied. Using a different steering wheel could cause ESC to malfunction causing a loss of vehicle control possibly resulting in an accident involving death or personal injury.

Steering Angle Sensor Re-Calibration

Whenever maintenance or repair work is performed to the steering mechanism, linkage, gear, adjustment of the wheel track, or if the steering angle sensor is replaced or the steering wheel is changed or re-centered, the Steering Angle Sensor must be re-calibrated.

WARNING!

If the Steering Angle Sensor is not re-calibrated, the Yaw Control system will not function properly. A uncalibrated sensor could result in a loss of control of your vehicle which can lead to an accident involving death or personal injury.

ATC Functions (standard)

Your truck/tractor ABS may be equipped with an automatic traction control (ATC) feature. This feature is controlled by a switch as shown in the next illustration. This feature is monitored by a warning lamp located on the switch.

Automatic Traction Control Warning Lamp

The Traction Control warning lamp on page 3-20 will briefly illuminate and then go out when the ignition switch is first turned on. The traction control warning lamp will illuminate whenever the ATC system detects drive wheel spin. The lamp will remain illuminated as long as wheel spin is detected and the ATC system is applying the

drive wheel brakes or reducing engine torque. Engine torque or vehicle speed should be reduced to eliminate wheel spin and prevent excessive application of the ATC system. Except for checking for proper illumination of the ABS and traction control warning lamps when first starting the vehicle, and for monitoring these lamps while driving, no special operating procedures are required. For detailed system description, see literature for your specific ABS that was provided with your vehicle.

This feature helps improve traction when vehicles are on slippery surfaces or surfaces with poor traction (i.e. mud or snow) by reducing drive wheel overspin. Automatic traction control works in two different ways:

- If a drive wheel starts to spin, ATC applies air pressure to brake the wheel. This transfers engine torque to the wheels with better traction.
- If all drive wheels spin, ATC reduces engine torque to provide improved traction.

ATC turns itself on and off, you do not have to select this feature. If drive wheels spin during acceleration, the ATC Warning Lamp comes on, indicating wheel spin control is active.

Do not allow the ATC Warning Lamp to remain on continuously for an extended length of time. Extended, continuous use of the ATC can cause overheating of the drive wheel brakes.

Deep Snow and Mud Switch (option)

A deep snow and mud switch is included with Wheel Spin Control. The Deep Snow and Mud feature is helpful during acceleration. This function increases available traction on extra soft surfaces like snow, mud or gravel, by slightly increasing the permissible wheel spin. When this function is in use, the ATC Warning Lamp blinks continuously.

Off-Road ABS Function Switch (option)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a separate switch to activate an Off-Road ABS function. This function is NOT to be used for On-Highway driving but is intended to be used to improve stopping performance in Off-Highway conditions (e.g. loose gravel and mud). The Off-Road ABS function is accomplished by allowing a "wedge" of material to build-up in front of momentarily locked wheels.

Features and Benefits

- Changes the ABS control limits to allow for a more aggressive ABS function while off-road.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Improves vehicle control and helps reduce stopping distances in off-road conditions or on poor traction surfaces such as loose gravel, sand and dirt.
- Allows retarders to function independently of the ABS function.
- If your vehicle does not have an engine retarder, the Off-Road ABS switch will function the same.

CAUTION

Never drive your vehicle on improved roads/highways with the Off-Road ABS function turned on. When you drive your vehicle onto an improved road surface or highway, immediately turn off the Off-Road ABS switch. Failure to do so will cause the ABS system to not function properly in an ABS event under 25 mph and could result in an accident or personal injury.

WARNING!

While the off-road mode can improve vehicle control and shorten stopping distances, some steering ability may be reduced on certain surfaces resulting from the momentarily sliding tires. Always operate your vehicle at safe operating speeds. Failure to do so may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and could result in an accident or personal injury.

How The Off-Road ABS Function Works

- The ABS lamp flashes slowly during off-road mode engagement. This is done to alert you of a modification to the ABS control software.
- At speeds above 25 mph, the ABS controller operates in the normal on-highway mode.
- At speeds between 10 and 25 mph, the ABS control software is modified to allow short periods (0.25 seconds) of locked-wheel cycles.
- At speeds below 10 mph, the ABS control software is turned off to allow locked wheels.
- When the Off-Road ABS function is enabled, the Retarder Disable output is turned off. That is, the engine retarders are left to function without ABS intervention. For additional information, see the Off-Road ABS pamphlet in your vehicle's glove box.

Hydraulic Brakes

WARNING!

Do not operate the vehicle in the event of a malfunction in any air or hydraulic circuit. Such a malfunction may prevent the brake system from operating properly, and could result in an injury accident. The vehicle should not be operated until the system is repaired and both braking circuits, including all pneumatic, hydraulic, and mechanical components are working properly.

The operation of the vehicle's braking system is based on the principle of hydraulics. Hydraulic action begins when force is applied to the brake pedal. This force creates hydraulic pressure in the master cylinder and is amplified with assistance of a power booster. The supplemental boost in force is developed when pressurized power steering fluid from the steering pump presses on the master cylinder piston. As a safety precaution, the pressurized fluid from the master cylinder has two mutually independent circuits. The primary circuit supplies the front wheels while the secondary circuit supplies the rear wheels. The displaced fluid from the master cylinder travels through brake pipes terminating at the wheel cylinders which actuate the brake pad mechanisms. Actuation of these mechanisms force the brake pads against the rotors to stop the wheels.

A reserve electric motor pump provides a redundant power source for the hydraulic booster in the event normal flow from the power steering pump is interrupted. Manual braking is also available in the event both the power and reserve systems are inoperative.

WARNING!

Never drive your vehicle with the parking brakes applied. Always release the parking brakes prior to moving the vehicle. Failure to disengage the parking brakes prior to moving your vehicle could result in excessive heat build-up of the brakes and start a fire.

NOTE

Today's diesel electronic engines have significant torque and startability power at low RPM. Combinations of engine speed and available torque may over-power the vehicle's parking brakes.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

The brake system is a critical vehicle safety system. For the safety of you and others around you, have the vehicle submitted for periodic preventive maintenance checks as well as having any suspected problems immediately checked by an Authorized Service Center. Failure to properly maintain your brake system can lead to serious injury accidents.

Brake Components

The following is a brief description of the hydraulic brake system. It is intended to supply you with general information on how the system works. For complete information see the Peterbilt Medium Duty Maintenance Manual.

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) Modulator Valve Body: adjusts brake fluid flow between the master cylinder and the wheel calipers to avoid wheel lockup.

ABS Warning Lamp: lights when the ABS controller detects wheel lock-up while driving and activates the ABS. Lights also when a fault in the ABS is detected.

Brake Fluid Reservoir: stores brake fluid and offers a place to replenish when needed.

Brake Master Cylinder: translates brake pedal force into hydraulic fluid pressure in the primary and secondary circuits.

Brake Pedal: applies actuation force from operator's foot to the master cylinder pistons.

Brake Warning Lamp: illuminates when either power steering fluid flow is interrupted or when a pressure differential is present in the primary and secondary brake fluid pressure. Either case adversely affects braking operation.

Differential Switch: measures the hydraulic fluid pressure difference between the primary and secondary circuits.

Electrohydraulic Pump: The Electrohydraulic (EH) pump is used as a backup boost pump. The EH pump turns on and provides fluid pressure

to the hydraulic booster in the event power steering fluid stops flowing through the booster head.

Front and Rear Wheel Calipers: translate hydraulic fluid pressure into force applied at each wheel-end brake rotor to retard wheel motion.

Hydraulic Booster: The hydraulic booster applies additional hydraulic force from the power steering gear to the master cylinder piston when the brake pedal is applied.

Parking Brake Lamp: illuminates when the parking brake is engaged (the lever is in the up position.)

Parking Brake Lever: the hand lever located in the cab which engages or disengages the driveline drum brake.

Power Steering Flow Switch: senses flow of power steering fluid.

Power Steering Fluid Reservoir: stores power steering fluid and offers a place to replenish when needed.

Power Steering Gear: assists the steering operation and sends pressurized power steering fluid to the brake booster.

Power Steering Pump: draws power steering fluid from the reservoir and sends it to the power steering gear.

Warning Buzzer: sounds when either power steering fluid flow is interrupted or when a pressure differential is present between the primary and secondary brake fluid pressure. Either case adversely affects braking operation.

Brake Warning Lamp

When the brake warning lamp comes on, it indicates a malfunction in the brake system. Possible malfunctions include loss of hydraulic pressure from the power steering circuit or a pressure differential between the primary and secondary brake circuits.

WARNING!

Do not operate the vehicle if the brake light or buzzer comes on. The light or buzzer indicates a failure in one of the brake components/system. Drive your vehicle to the side of the road immediately. Failure to do this may lead to an accident and severe injury.

SERVICE BRAKE WARNING INDICATOR

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

If the buzzer sounds while driving, or if the BRAKE light comes on, do the following:

1. Slow down carefully.
   Here are some things you can do to assist in slowing the vehicle:
   - **Downshift** - Putting the transmission into a lower gear will help slow the vehicle.
   - **Pump the brakes** - Pumping the brake pedal may generate enough hydraulic pressure to stop the vehicle.
   - **Use the parking brake** - The parking or emergency brake is separate from the hydraulic system. Therefore it can be used to slow the vehicle.
2. Move a safe distance off the road and stop.
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Turn on the emergency flasher and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.

Wet or Overheated Brakes

Wet Brakes

If you have been driving in heavy rain or deep standing water, your brakes will get wet. Water in the brakes can cause them to be weak, to apply unevenly, or to grab. These conditions can cause a lack of braking power, wheel lockups, or pulling of the vehicle to one side or the other.

Avoid driving through deep puddles or flowing water if possible. If not possible, you should to the following:

- Slow down.
- Place transmission in lower gear.
- Gently press on the brake pedal.
- Increase engine speed while keeping light pressure on the brake pedal for a short distance to dry out the brake linings.

Overheated Brakes

While traveling down steep hills, gravity will tend to speed you up. You must go slow enough that your brakes can hold you back without getting too hot. If you ride the brake pedal and the brakes get too hot, they may "fade", causing you to press even harder in an attempt to maintain your desired stopping power. The brakes may even fade so much that you won't be able to slow down or stop at all.

Using lower transmission gears will help keep the vehicle from going too fast. Using lower gears allows engine compression and friction to help slow the vehicle. Be sure to be in the right gear before you start down a hill, especially if you have a manual transmission. You could get hung up in NEUTRAL and lose the benefit of engine braking. "Coasting" is illegal, and also VERY dangerous.

Anti-Lock Braking System

This vehicle is equipped with an Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS). ABS reduces the likelihood of a wheel locking. If a wheel is about to lock during braking, the ABS will automatically adjust hydraulic pressure to the brake calipers on the appropriate wheel(s) to prevent wheel lock-up. The ABS is automatically activated when the ignition switch is turned on.

CAUTION

The center pin of the 7-way trailer light line may be constantly powered for ABS. Make sure it will not accidently turn on trailer equipment.

ABS Warning Lamp

The ABS warning lamp will come on briefly, then go off, when the key switch is first turned on. If the lamp remains ON until a speed of 4 mph (6 km/h) is reached, then goes OFF, there may be a stored fault code. If the lamp remains ON when a speed in excess of 4 mph (6 km/h) is reached, there may be an active fault in the ABS system.

CAUTION

If the ABS warning light does not illuminate when the ignition is first turned on, there is a problem with the bulb or wiring. You should have this checked as soon as possible.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

No indication will be given via the dashboard warning lights or buzzer if tires of the wrong size are installed on your vehicle. The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) is calibrated for the specific tire revolutions per mile. Use of a tire and/or wheel size different from that originally installed on your vehicle may cause the ABS system to not function during a hard braking event. This could cause an accident or serious personal injury. Consult with your Peterbilt dealer before using a different tire and/or wheel size than was originally installed on your vehicle.

Parking Brake Burnishing

This procedure is recommended for new vehicles where less lever actuation force is required. This procedure is mandatory whenever the driveline brake shoes or brake drum are replaced.

WARNING!

If a new drum or new brake shoes are installed, the driveline brake must be burnished. Failure to properly burnish the parking brake before putting it in service could result in an inoperative parking brake, possible vehicle rollaway, and serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

1. Drive the vehicle at 15 mph (24 km/h) in a low gear (first or second) on a dry, hard road surface.
2. Apply the parking brake lever with a moderate force (approximately 40 pounds) until the vehicle is brought to a stop. Do not allow the wheels to lock up.
3. After stopping, release the parking brake lever and drive the vehicle at 20 mph (32 km/h) in a low gear for approximately 2.5 miles, to allow the brake drum to cool.
4. Repeat steps 1, 2, and 3 above until a total of 10 stops have been completed.
5. Adjust the parking brake lever. See the Medium Duty Maintenance Manual.

Retarders

Various retarders are available which function against the engine, driveline, or transmission. These are devices that use your engine's power to slow down your vehicle. They save wear and tear on your service brakes and can be a safety feature, too, because they can keep your brakes from overheating.

Ideally, you should always slow your vehicle with your retarder (where permitted by law) and use your service brakes only for stopping completely. Operating this way will greatly prolong the life of your brakes.

WARNING!

Do not use any of the vehicle's retarders in any situation that requires an immediate stop and/or in situations of poor traction (such as wet, icy or snow covered roads). Trying to use the retarder instead of the service brakes may cause a loss of vehicle control which may result in an accident involving death or personal injury.

WARNING!

The service brakes must be used in an emergency. The retarder alone might not stop you fast enough to prevent an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

The retarder is NOT intended as the primary brake for the vehicle, nor is it an emergency brake. The retarder only helps the service brakes by using pressure to slow the drivetrain. Use the service brakes for quick stops.

Do not use the retarder when operating on road surfaces with poor traction (such as wet, icy, or snow covered roads or gravel). Retarders can cause the wheels to skid on a slippery surface.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

Driving Bobtail or with an Unloaded Trailer

We recommend that you do not use your engine retarder to slow down when you are bobtailing or pulling an empty trailer.

WARNING!

Using an engine retarder can cause a wheel lockup. The trailer is not loading the tires enough to give the traction you may need. When you are bobtail or unloaded, you can have a serious accident if your wheels lock suddenly during braking. You could be killed or injured. Don't use your retarder when you are driving bobtail or with an unloaded trailer.

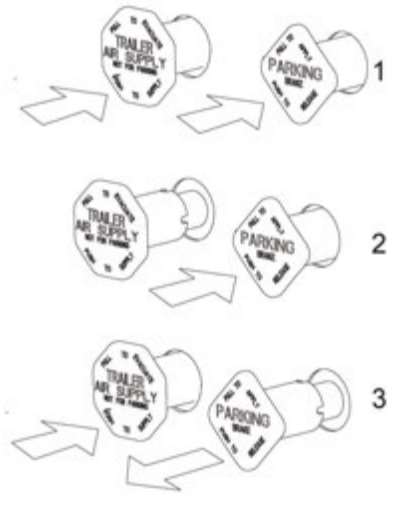
Transmission Retarder

If you have this option, it will act like a brake to slow your vehicle without using the brakes. Take your foot off the throttle and operate the retarder switch. When you do not need full retarder effect, you can apply it intermittently (off and on) to cause gradual or partial slowing. Continuous application of your retarder will cause your hydraulic fluid to get hotter. Intermittent application will help prevent overheating.

WARNING!

Do not rely on your automatic transmission hydraulic retarder to stop your vehicle. If your engine shuts down, the vehicle's retarder will cease to operate which may lead to an accident involving death or personal injury. Always be ready to suddenly apply the service brakes.

Parking Brake



1. Normal Run Position
2. Trailer Park With Vehicle Released
3. System Park or Trailer Charge With Vehicle Parked

Parking brakes work in reverse action of the regular brakes. When the parking brakes are engaged, air is exhausted from the spring chambers which allow the spring to engage the brakes. This design also provides for the safety function if a brake circuit has a leak and loses air. In such a scenario, the parking brakes will apply.

The vehicle's parking brake controls are the yellow diamond shaped knob on your dash board. If the vehicle is equipped to tow a trailer, then there will be an additional red octagon shaped knob for the trailer parking brakes. Parking brakes will be engaged when either of these knobs are pulled OUT. (If one knob is pulled out, the other knob will automatically pop out.)

Pushing IN a knob will disengage the respective parking brakes. If you push in the yellow knob only, you will disengage the vehicle's parking brakes but will not disengage the trailer parking brakes (if applicable). Either knob will pop back out if the system pressure is not above 60 psi (414 kPa).

The instrument panel display will provide a message any time the parking brakes (vehicle or the trailer) are set and the vehicle is put into motion.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise Control Switch

This vehicle may have cruise control switches located on the steering wheel instead of the switches on the dash board. The instructions are still the same.

- **To Turn On:**

Press the ON/OFF button.

- **To Turn Off:**

Press the ON/OFF button. Any previous speed settings are cleared.

Using Cruise Control While Driving

Setting Cruise Speed

1. Ensure that the vehicle speed is above the minimum cruise control speed (19 mph (30 km/h) for PACCAR MX engine and 30 mph (48 km/h) for the Cummins and PACCAR PX series engines) and the engine speed is above 1100 rpm.
2. Press the "ON/OFF" button.
3. Accelerate the vehicle to the desired cruise speed.
4. Press the "SET" button to set the cruise speed.

NOTE
Cruise Control may not hold the set speed going down hills. If the speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down. This will cancel Cruise Control.

Changing the Cruise Set Speed

For vehicles with cruise control buttons on the steering wheel, the cruise speed may be changed by using the +/- button. The pressing and holding the + button will increase speed while pressing and holding the - button will decrease speed. For vehicles with dash mounted cruise control switches, changing the speed is done through the "Set/Resume" button. To increase the speed, press and hold the Set button. To decrease the speed, press and hold the "Resume" button.

Cancelling Cruise Control

You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake pedal.
- Tap the clutch pedal.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Press the ON/OFF button if the vehicle has dash board mounted cruise control switches or the CANCEL button if the vehicle has cruise control switches on the steering wheel.

Resuming Cruise Control

1. If you tapped the brake or clutch pedal, the cruise control remembered the previously set cruise speed. To resume that set speed, accelerate above the minimum cruise control speed and press the "RESUME" button.
2. If you pressed the "OFF" button (or the steering wheel mounted "CANCEL" button) or turned the ignition key OFF, this cleared the system memory and you will need to set a new cruise speed.

Using Cruise Control for Stationary PTO Operation

Setting Idle Speed

1. Ensure parking brakes are applied.
2. Ensure transmission is in Neutral.
3. Engage PTO per the manufacturer's operating instructions.
4. Press the "ON" button.
5. Press the "SET" button to obtain the desired engine rpm.

Cancelling Cruise Control

You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake pedal.
- Tap the clutch pedal.
- Press the "OFF" button (or the steering wheel mounted "CANCEL" button).

NOTE

Cruise control functions and features may vary depending upon which engine you have. For specific explanation of your cruise control, see the cruise control or engine manual included with your vehicle.

This vehicles electronic system will perform a ‘rationality check’ every time the vehicle is started. This check is to ensure that the service brakes are working before allowing cruise control to function. This safety feature is designed to ensure that a driver is able to cancel the cruise set speed by using the service brake pedal. The system will not allow cruise control operation if it does not pass the ‘rationality check’. The instrument cluster will prompt you to press the service brake pedal if it has not been pressed since the vehicle has been started.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

In vehicles with Eaton transmissions, the cruise control switches may be located on the shift control knob.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

AXLE

Differential Lock

The vehicle may be equipped with switches to lock the either of the rear axle differentials. Depending on how the vehicle is specified, a combination individual switches may be available that can lock the interaxle driveline and/or any combination of the forward rear or rear-rear driving axles.

The interaxle differential switch allows each axle to turn independently.
In certain situations, engaging the interaxle differential lock relieves stress on the rear axles and reduces tire wear. Engaging this switch will also provide better traction in slippery or loose gravel conditions.

In the LOCK position, continuous operation on paved, dry surfaces, put stress on the axles, and can possibly damage the internal gears. The switch has a guard to prevent accidental operation of the switch.

Locking the differentials is typically used during ice or snow conditions and without tire chains, unpaved roads that have loose sand, mud or uneven surfaces. Look ahead and predict when the differential needs to be locked. Stop the vehicle and lock the differentials before approaching.

While using the differential in the locked position, do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h). When disengaging the differential lock, reduce the throttle to prevent drivetrain damage.

WARNING!

Do not put the differential lock in the LOCK position while the wheels are spinning freely (slipping), you could lose control of the vehicle or cause axle damage. Switch to LOCK only when the wheels are not spinning. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Dual Range (Two-Speed) Rear Axle

Your vehicle may be equipped with a two-speed or dual range axle (option). You can select two rear axle ratios for operating under heavy loads or rough terrain as well as for over the road hauling.

The Low Range provides maximum torque for hauling heavy loads or traveling over rough terrain. The High Range is a faster ratio for highway speeds and general over the road conditions. A switch on the accessory switch panel controls the Dual Range Rear Axle. You will notice that the switch has a guard to protect you from activating it accidentally. Always park your vehicle with the range selector in LOW.

Dual Range Axle Operation

Important tips on operating a Dual Range Axle with Interaxle Differential:

Shift the axle with the inter-axle differential in the unlocked position only.

When you are driving with poor traction, lock the differential. When you have the differential locked, drive with the axle in LOW range only.

When you are driving on a surface with good traction, keep the interaxle differential unlocked. You can drive with the axle in the LOW or HIGH range.

Always UNLOCK the inter-axle differential before shifting the axle speed range.

CAUTION

If you shift the axle range with the inter-axle differential in LOCK, you could seriously damage the axles. Never shift the axle range with the differential locked.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Starting-Up

1. Unlock the inter-axle differential before starting.
2. Put the Range Selector in the LOW range. Shift the transmission to start the vehicle moving.
3. When you are driving on rough terrain and secondary roads, or under a very heavy load, keep the axle in the LOW range. Shift the transmission to maintain proper road speed.

WARNING!

Never shift the axle when moving downhill. Engine driveline disengagement may occur, eliminating engine retardation and allowing the wheels to spin faster than the current speed of the engine. This may require severe braking to slow the vehicle down and can result in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Proper shifting of the axle depends on the synchronization of engine/driveline and wheel speed. When you shift the axle, the connection between the engine and wheels is momentarily disengaged while the gearing is synchronized. Normally when the axle is shifted the speed of the engine, axle, and wheels adjust, allowing for proper gear engagement.

When going downhill the wheels will not slow down, but will tend to speed up, which makes gear synchronization almost impossible. As a result, the axle is neither in HIGH nor LOW range and all engine/driveline retardation is lost. Without engine retardation it is more difficult to slow the vehicle down and greater stress is put on the brake system.

CAUTION

To avoid damaging your vehicle shift the axle at slower travel speeds until you are used to driving with a dual range axle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

LOW to HIGH (Cruising)

When you go from rough terrain to highway driving, shift the axle to the HIGH range following this procedure:

1. Be sure the differential is **UNLOCKED**.
2. Maintain your vehicle speed (accelerator depressed) and move the Range Selector lever to **HIGH**.
3. Keep driving with the accelerator depressed until you want the axle to shift.
4. To make the axle shift, release the accelerator until the axle shifts. You are now in the HIGH axle range for highway speeds. Shift the transmission normally to reach your desired cruising speed.

HIGH to LOW (Rough Terrain)

If you need to downshift the axle for more power or you are driving on rough terrain:

1. Maintain your vehicle speed (accelerator depressed) and move the Range Selector lever to **LOW**.
2. Keep driving with the accelerator depressed until you want the axle to downshift.
3. To make the axle downshift, release and depress the accelerator quickly to increase the engine RPM. The axle will shift to LOW range.
4. You are now in the LOW axle range for rough terrain and heavy loads. Shift the transmission normally to maintain the desired speed.

Auxiliary Axles - Pusher or Tag

Adjustable auxiliary axles (commonly known as Pusher or Tag axles) can add to the productivity of the vehicle by increasing the load capabilities of the vehicle when they are in the deployed (down) position. There are different configurations of axles with different functionality (liftable versus steerable) Without the extra axle, the excessive weight can reduce the service life of vehicle components such as, but not limited to, the frame rail, axles, suspension and brakes.

Operation of the auxiliary axles includes the proper maintenance of the system and calibration of its controls. Operating the auxiliary axles will also require a firm understanding of the

https://truckmanualshub.com/

GAWR and the load that is being carried.

The vehicle will have switches on the dash to control the position of the auxiliary axles. In certain situations, however, the system will override the controls to protect the axle system. Any liftable and steerable auxiliary axles will rise off of the ground when the parking brakes are engaged or when the vehicle is put in reverse. If the liftable auxiliary axle is not a steerable axle, then it will remain in the down position when activated by the dash mounted switch.

Operating the auxiliary liftable axles must be performed in a manner that does not exceed the axle creep rating. Axle creep ratings are weight and speed limits that are allowed while the vehicle is fully loaded (in excess of the vehicle's standard GAWR) and the axle is in its up position. Axle creep ratings are assigned by the axle manufacturer and are based on axle model and intended service of the vehicle. Contact an authorized dealership if you are unable to identify the axle creep rating of this vehicle.

- Liftable/steerable (axle lift calibration required)
- Liftable/non-steerable (axle lift calibration required)
- Non-liftable (some suspensions require dump valve calibration)

WARNING!

Do not operate or park the vehicle with auxiliary axles in the down/loaded position when vehicle is unladen, or is being unloaded. Raise or dump air into driver-controlled auxiliary axle(s) prior to unloading vehicle. Failure to do so can result in loss of vehicle control or rollaway that may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Axle Creep Rating Definition
Creep Ratings

Low speed, off-highway (work site) axle loads, which exceed the standard gross axle weight rating (GAWR) of a particular axle.

Operator's using vehicles equipped with liftable auxiliary axles must consider creep ratings when any liftable axle is unloaded or in the raised position. Liftable auxiliary axles should only be raised (or unloaded) to improve maneuverability in an off-road use or when vehicle is unloaded.

NOTE

Axle Creep ratings MUST NOT be exceeded.

Contact your dealer or axle manufacturer to determine what the creep rating is for your particular axle(s) and configuration. Creep ratings are generally limited to the following:

- Tandem rear axles only
- Straight trucks only
- Maximum spring mount centers per axle manufacturers specifications
- Maximum tire static loaded radius (SLR) per axle manufacturers specifications

CAUTION

Always lower the axles as soon as possible after receiving a load. Never exceed 5 miles per hour when driving with a load with the auxiliary axle(s) raised/unloaded. Failure to lower the axle(s) can overload the frame and remaining axles, and could cause equipment damage.

WARNING!

Never operate the vehicle with more pressure in the lift axles than is necessary to carry the load, as determined by the calibration procedure described. Failure to do so can result in loss of traction and stability at the steer and/or drive axles and can result in increased braking distance which could cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Do not modify the air system and/or control functionality on a factory installed auxiliary axle(s). Modifying the factory operation of the pusher and/or tag axle(s) will void your warranty, and can cause equipment damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

CAUTION

A change in tire size on either the auxiliary axles or the drive/steer axles can change the calibration of the auxiliary axles. If tires are installed with a different loaded radius, the calibration procedure must be repeated. Failure to do so can cause equipment damage.

Liftable/Steerable or Liftable/Non-Steerable Pusher and/or Tag Axle Calibration Procedure

Below are some general instructions on how to adjust and calibrate the air control valve for the auxiliary axles to obtain the proper load distribution of the axle(s). For additional operating and maintenance instructions, see the pusher or tag suspension manufacturer literature in the glove box or contact them directly.

NOTE

This procedure must be performed prior to placing the vehicle into service.

Setting the Pressure-to-Load Ratio

To obtain the desired axle load distribution, you must correlate the suspension air gauge pressure to the actual axle load by scaling the axle weight(s) and adjusting the pressure to obtain the desired load. Once the desired load or load range is achieved, document the pressure-to-load ratio or setting for future use.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

General Calibration Guidelines

These instructions are general in nature. For more specific instructions, review the pusher or tag suspension manufacturers maintenance manual or contact the nearest authorized dealer.

> **NOTE**
>
> Perform this procedure at or near a weight scale. Procedure can be performed while parked on the weight scale if scale is available.

1. Park loaded vehicle on level surface with wheels blocked.
2. Release vehicles spring brakes. (Do not release for Liftable/Non-Steerable pusher or tag axles).
3. Lower the pusher/tag axles with the axle lift control flip valve. (For some non-liftable axles, inflate air suspension).
4. Adjust the amount of load on each axle by turning the pressure regulator clockwise to increase the load or counterclockwise to decrease the load. (The suspension manufacturer may publish pre-established Pressure-to-Load Ratio Pressure Settings to assist you in achieving an estimated ground load).
5. After setting the pressure to obtain the desired axle load, verify proper ground loading with the weight scale.

> **NOTE**
>
> Exceeding local, state or federal weight limits may result in citations. Contact your local commercial weight enforcement office for limits in your area.

Operation guidelines

> **NOTE**
>
> Steerable-pusher and/or tag axle(s) will raise when the transmission is shifted into reverse or when the parking brakes are applied.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Maximizing Drive Axle Traction

Adjust the pressure regulator control knob to a lower pressure until desired traction is obtained. By reducing air pressure at pusher or tag axle, load will be transferred to drive axles. Do not overload drive axles.

Coupling To A Loaded Trailer

Inflate air springs of the auxiliary axles to the desired pressure after coupling to a loaded trailer while still maintaining proper traction of the drive axles.

Unloading Operation

Always deflate air springs of the auxiliary axles before attempting to unload vehicle. This allows maximum traction of the drive axles to control the vehicle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Non-liftable (Non-steerable) Axles

Some suspensions require dump valve calibration.

Example: Neway dead axles do not lift, but the air can be dumped out of them to unload them when empty. Air pressure is controlled via an adjustable regulator. These axles need to be calibrated for load.

Contact your authorized dealer or axle/suspension manufacturer for dump valve calibration procedures.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

SUSPENSION

Setting Ride Height

Vehicles equipped with rear air suspensions have their ride height and axle (pinion) angle(s) preset at the factory. These are precision settings and should not be altered. Incorrectly adjusted ride height may result in improper interaxle U-joint working angles. This can result in premature driveline wear and driveline vibration. If your vehicle is equipped with a Peterbilt rear air suspension, and if it becomes necessary to reset the ride height, you may temporarily set it by following the next procedure. Proper ride height measurement and values for a fully laden vehicle are shown in the illustration and table below.

Ride Height Measurement (Location for Tandem Axles Shown)

Fully Laden Vehicle		
Proprietary Rear	**Ride Height, inches (mm)**	
Air Suspension	**Single Drive**	**Tandem Drive**
Air Leaf	N/A	11.70 (297)
Air Trac	11.00 (279)	11.00 (279)
Low Air Leaf	6.50 (165)	8.50 (216)
Low Low Air Leaf	N/A	6.50 (165)
FLEX Air	N/A	8.50 (216)

Unladen Vehicle		
Proprietary Rear	**Ride Height, inches (mm)**	
Air Suspension	**Single Drive**	**Tandem Drive**
Air Leaf	N/A	12.0 (305)
Air Trac	11.38 (289)	11.38 (289)
Low Air Leaf (Before April 2004)	8.75 (222)	8.75 (222)
Low Air Leaf (After April 2004)	6.75 (171)	8.75 (222)
Low Low Air Leaf	N/A	6.75 (171)
FLEX Air	N/A	8.75 (222)

Follow this procedure to temporarily set ride height.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Ensure that a vehicle is parked and the wheels chocked before beginning this procedure.

CAUTION

Completing this procedure will enable you to safely reach the nearest authorized Peterbilt repair facility to have ride height and pinion angle reset using the proper equipment and technique. Do this as soon as possible to avoid potential driveline damage.

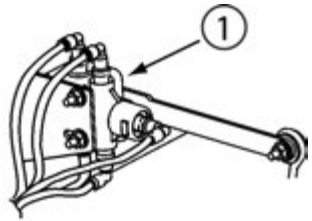
NOTE

Suitable wheel chocks are at a minimum an 18-inch (46 cm) long 4x4.

1. Ensure that the tractor is fully laden during this procedure. Do not use these procedures on a vehicle that is not laden (bobtail).

2. Ensure the air supply and delivery plumbing of the height control valve is consistent with the following illustrations.

Typical Height Control Valve (Location on Vehicle)



Typical Height Control Valve (Rear View Looking Forward)

1. Alignment Dowel

NOTE

- At least one of the mounting holes in the height control valve bracket will be slotted to permit rotating the valve.
- On dual-valve systems, begin with the LH valve on the next step.

3. Loosen the fasteners mounting a height control valve to its bracket.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

- The rear of a vehicle will drop about 3 1/2 inches (88 mm) when the air springs are deflated. Ensure that no persons or objects that could be killed, injured or damaged are under the vehicle before deflating the air springs.
- To minimize risk of death, personal injury or property damage, do not use a dump valve to deflate the air springs. Rotate the height control valve(s) manually to ensure positive control of air spring deflation.
- To minimize risk of death or personal injury, keep away from air springs as they are being inflated.

4. Rotate the valve either clockwise or counterclockwise until air pressure in the air springs provides the ride height specified for that suspension. Measure the ride height from the bottom of the frame rail to the approximate centerline of the rearmost drive axle hub:

- For tandem axles, make the vertical measurement at the centerline of the suspension (see illustration on page 4-58).
- For a single axle, make the measurement in front of the axle, in the area forward of the tires but not past the suspension bracket.

5. When at the correct ride height, ensure that the height control valve lever is in the neutral position, then install either the built-in alignment pin or a 1/8-inch (3 mm) dowel (see illustration on page 4-58).

6. Torque the mounting fasteners to 55-75 Lb. in. (6.2-8.5 Nm.).

7. Remove the alignment pin or dowel.

8. Repeat Steps 2 through 6 above for the RH valve on vehicles with a dual-valve system.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Driving with Deflated Air Springs

If an air spring is ruptured, there will be enough air pressure to drive the vehicle to a safe stop off the highway to investigate the problem.

WARNING!

Do not continue to drive with ruptured air springs. The air loss can cause the spring brakes to apply allowing your brakes to drag and burn up the linings, which could lead to an accident causing death or personal injury. Do not continue to operate the vehicle in this condition.

You can get to a repair facility if you do the following:

1. Remove the height control link connected to the axle and to the suspension air valve control arm. This will cause the air valve control arm to center in the closed position.
2. The air system can then be pumped up to normal pressure for continued operation.

WARNING!

Do not drive the vehicle if the air pressure is less than 100 psi (690 kPa). Driving the vehicle with less than 100 psi (690 kPa) could make the brakes unsafe to use which could cause an accident involving death or personal injury.

CAUTION

Operating a vehicle with air suspension bags either overinflated or underinflated may cause damage to driveline components. If a vehicle must be operated under such conditions, do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

AFTER-TREATMENT SYSTEM

Introduction

This vehicle will has an exhaust After-Treatment System (ATS), to control vehicle exhaust emissions, which consist of a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF), Selective Catalyst Reduction (SCR), Regeneration Switch and warning lights. The DPF will trap soot from the engine exhaust gases. The SCR uses Diesel Exhaust Fluid to reduce the levels of NOx in the engine exhaust. The ATS will periodically clean (regenerate) the DPF. Please refer to the Exhaust Aftertreatment System Supplement provided with the vehicle for more detailed description of functionality and warnings.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

DRIVING TIPS AND TECHNIQUES

Introduction

This section covers additional driving tips and techniques on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently.

Coasting

WARNING!

Do not coast with the transmission in neutral or with the clutch pedal depressed—it is a dangerous practice. Coasting in neutral may result in damage to your drivetrain when you try to re-engage the transmission. You could lose control of the vehicle which can lead to an accident involving death or personal injury.

Do not coast with the transmission in neutral or with the clutch pedal depressed. Besides being illegal and dangerous, coasting is also expensive. It causes premature failure or damage to the clutch and transmission and overloads the brake system.

Coasting with the transmission in neutral also prevents proper transmission component lubrication. During coasting the transmission is driven by the rear wheels, and the countershaft gear (which lubricates the transmission components by oil splash) will only be turning at idle speed.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Descending a Grade

WARNING!

Do not hold the brake pedal down too long or too often while going down a steep or long grade. This could cause the brakes to overheat and reduce their effectiveness. As a result, the vehicle will not slow down at the usual rate. To reduce the risk of an accident which could cause death or personal injury, before going down a steep or long grade, reduce speed and shift the transmission into a lower gear to help control your vehicle speed. Failure to follow procedures for proper downhill operation could result in loss of vehicle control.

Engine Overspeed

CAUTION

To avoid engine damage, do not let the engine rpm go beyond the maximum governed rpm—valve damage could result if overspeed conditions occur.

NOTE

Often these recommendations are secondary to maintaining an adequate and safe speed relative to the surrounding traffic and road conditions.

Operate the engine within the optimum engine rpm range and do not allow the rpm's to exceed the maximum governed speed. See your Engine Operation and Maintenance manual for information regarding engine rpm. When the engine is used as a brake to control vehicle speed (e.g., while driving down a grade), do not allow the engine rpm to exceed maximum governed speed.

Under normal load and road conditions operate the engine in the lower end of the range.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Use of Tachometer

The tachometer is an instrument that aids in obtaining the best performance of the engine and manual transmission, serving as a guide for shifting gears.

Refer to the Engine Operation and Maintenance manual for optimum engine rpm.

- If the engine rpm moves beyond the maximum governed speed, indicating an overspeed condition, apply the service brake or shift to a higher gear to bring engine rpm within the optimum speed range.
- When driving downhill: shift to a lower gear, use the engine brake (if so equipped), and use the service brake, keeping the engine speed below 2,100 rpm.

When the engine speed reaches its maximum governed speed, the injection pump governor cuts off fuel to the engine. However, the governor has no control over the engine rpm when it is being driven by the vehicle's transmission, for example, on steep downgrades. Apply service brakes or shift to a higher gear.

Fuel economy and engine performance are also directly related to driving habits:

- The best results in trip time and fuel economy are obtained while driving the vehicle at a steady speed.
- Shift into higher or lower gears (or apply the service brake) to keep engine rpm near the lower end of the optimum operating range.
- Avoid rapid acceleration and braking.

Fuel - Excess Consumption

The vehicle's fuel consumption is connected to three important factors: maintenance, driving habits, and general condition of the road, traffic conditions, and vehicle load.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Maintenance

Proper maintenance will keep the vehicle running like new even after long periods of use. The driver must perform the daily and weekly checks of the vehicle.

Maintenance factors affecting fuel consumption:

- air and/or fuel filters partially clogged
- engine valves out of adjustment
- injection pump improperly synchronized
- injection nozzles defective or uncalibrated
- improperly inflated tires
- wheel bearings improperly adjusted
- clutch improperly adjusted or worn (slipping)
- fuel leaks

Driving Habits

Wrong driving habits must be corrected and the recommendations on economic driving should be followed.

Driving factors affecting fuel consumption:

- excessive speed and unnecessary fast acceleration
- long periods of idling
- driving with foot resting on the (manual transmission) clutch pedal

https://truckmanualshub.com/

General Condition

Other factors affecting fuel consumption are related to loads and type of roads on which the vehicle operates. It is not always possible to choose the most adequate road, but it must be kept in mind that the ideal road is the one that allows a steady speed in high gear, without requiring frequent braking and acceleration.

The following general conditions can affect fuel consumption:

- overload
- unbalanced load
- very high load
- inadequate roads
- traffic conditions

https://truckmanualshub.com/

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Before Stopping the Engine

A hot engine stores a great amount of heat. It doesn't cool down immediately after you shut it off. Always cool your engine down before shutting it off. You will greatly increase its service life.

Idle the engine at 1000 RPM for five minutes. Then low idle for thirty seconds before shutdown. This will allow circulating coolant and lubricating oil to carry away heat from the cylinder head, valves, pistons, cylinder liners, turbocharger, and bearings. This way you can prevent serious engine damage that may result from uneven cooling.

Turbochargers

This cooling-down practice is especially important on a turbocharged engine. The turbocharger contains bearings and seals that are subjected to hot exhaust gases. While the engine is operating, heat is carried away by circulating oil. If you stop the engine suddenly, the temperature of the turbocharger could rise as much as 100°F (55°C) above the temperature reached during operation. A sudden rise in temperature like this could cause the bearings to seize or the oil seals to loosen.

Refueling

Air inside the fuel tanks allows water to condense in the tank. To prevent this condensation while the vehicle is parked for extended periods of time, fill the tanks to 95 percent of capacity. Never fill to more than 95 percent capacity as this provides room for expansion resulting from temperature extremes. When refueling, add approximately the same amount to each fuel tank on vehicles with more than one tank.

WARNING!

Do not carry additional fuel containers in your vehicle. Fuel containers, either full or empty, may leak, explode, and cause or feed a fire. Do not carry extra fuel containers, even empty ones are dangerous. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Diesel fuel in the presence of an ignition source (such as a cigarette) could cause an explosion. A mixture of gasoline or alcohol with diesel fuel increases this risk of explosion. Do not remove a fuel tank cap near an open flame. Use only the fuel and/or additives recommended for your engine. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Specification: Use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) Fuel, as recommended by engine manufacturers. If you need further information on fuel specifications, consult the Engine Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Location of Fuel Shut-Off Valves

If your vehicle is equipped with shut-off valves for the take-off and return lines, they are located on the fuel lines entering the top of the fuel tank. Fuel shut-off valves for the fuel crossover line are on the bottom of the fuel tank, at the crossover line connection.

Refuel Before the Final Stop

Air space in your fuel tanks allows water to condense there. To prevent this condensation while you are stopped, fill your tanks to 95% of capacity.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Final Stop

To make sure your vehicle is ready to go after a long stop (such as over night), please follow the suggestions below. Your vehicle will be easier to get going when you are ready, and it will be safer for anyone who might be around it. Please remember, too, that in some states it is illegal to leave the engine running and the vehicle unattended.

Final Stopping Procedures

1. Set the parking brake before leaving the driver's seat. To hold your vehicle while it is parked, don't rely on:

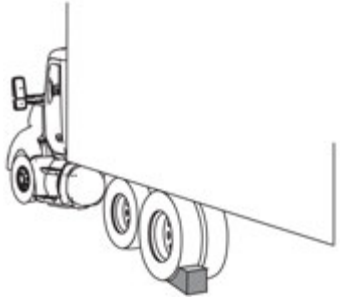
- Air Brakes
- Hand Control Valve for Trailer Brakes
- Engine Compression

WARNING!

Using the trailer hand brake or air brakes to hold a parked vehicle is dangerous. Because they work with air pressure, these brakes could come loose. Your vehicle could roll, causing an accident involving death or personal injury. Always set the parking brakes. Never rely on the trailer hand brake or truck air brakes to hold a parked vehicle.

2. If you are parked on a steep grade, block the wheels.

Suitable wheel chocks are at a minimum an 18-inch (46 cm) long 4x4.

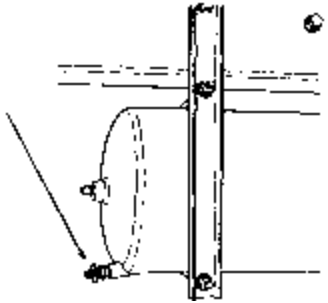


Blocked Wheels

3. Drain water from the air reservoirs. While the engine and air supply system are still warm, drain moisture from the air reservoirs. Open the reservoir drains just enough to drain the moisture. Don't deplete the entire

https://truckmanualshub.com/

air supply. Be sure to close the drains before leaving the vehicle.



Opening Drains

4. Secure the vehicle. Close all the windows and lock all the doors.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Introduction 5-9
Maintenance Schedule 5-12

LUBRICANT SPECIFICATIONS

Introduction 5-38
Engine 5-38
Master Lubrication Index 5-41
Fuller Transmission Lubrication 5-45
Allison Transmission Lubrication 5-47
Spicer Transmission Lubrication 5-47
Oil Changes 5-48
Meritor Axle Lubrication 5-49
Eaton/Dana Axle Lubrication 5-50
Wheel Bearing Lubrication 5-51
Universal Joint Lubrication 5-52
Steering Gear Lubrication 5-52

https://truckmanualshub.com/

AIR SYSTEM

Introduction 5-54
Air Dryer 5-57
Air Tanks 5-59
Air Gauges and Air Leaks 5-60
Air Compressor 5-61

BRAKE SYSTEM

Brake Adjustment 5-63

CAB

Exterior Maintenance 5-71
Cleaning, Protecting and Weather Stripping . . . 5-72
Safety Restraint System - Inspection 5-75
Windshield Wiper/Washer 5-79

COOLING SYSTEM

Cooling system maintenance 5-80
Engine (Block) Heater 5-84

ELECTRICAL

Electrical System 5-85
Light Bulbs 5-86
Bulb Specifications 5-87
Fuses, Circuit Breakers and Relays 5-87
Fuse Inspection and Replacement 5-90
Adding Electrical Options 5-90
Batteries 5-91
Battery Care 5-95
Battery Charging 5-95
Electrical and Alternator Precautions 5-98
Remote Keyless Entry 5-98

ENGINE

Engine Maintenance 5-99
Engine Lubrication 5-100
Accessory Drive Belts 5-102
Engine Fan 5-103
Air Intake System 5-104

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Turbocharger 5-105
Air Cleaners 5-105
ServiSignal™ Mini Indicator 5-107
Exhaust System 5-107
Engine Mounting 5-107

FUEL SYSTEM

Location of Fuel Shut-off Valves. 5-109
Specification 5-109
Fuel Filters 5-109

FRAME

Introduction 5-110

FRONT AXLE AND SUSPENSION

Axle Lubrication 5-114
Inspection 5-115
Wheel Alignment 5-115
U-Bolt Torque 5-116

https://truckmanualshub.com/

HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER

Introduction 5-118
Air Filters 5-120
Heater 5-120
Air Conditioner 5-121

NOISE AND EMISSION CONTROL

Noise Emission Warranty 5-122
Inspection and Maintenance Instructions 5-124
Noise Control System - Maintenance Log 5-129

REAR AXLE AND SUSPENSION

General Maintenance 5-132
Visual Inspection 5-133
Rear Suspension Fasteners 5-134
Rear Axle Lubrication 5-135
Rear Axle Alignment 5-137

STEERING SYSTEM

Power Steering 5-138

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fluid Level and Refill 5-139
Steering Shaft 5-140

DRIVELINE

Driveshaft Maintenance 5-142
U-Joints 5-142

TIRES AND WHEEL

Tires 5-143
Wheel Mounting and Fastening 5-149
Wheel Replacement With Disc Brake Option . . . 5-151
Disc Wheels 5-153

WHEEL BEARING

Wheel Bearing Adjustment 5-154

TRANSMISSION AND CLUTCH

Introduction 5-155
All Transmissions 5-155
Manual Transmissions 5-156
Clutch System Introduction 5-156

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Clutch Adjustment — Normal Wear 5-157
Automatic Transmissions 5-158

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Introduction

Preventive maintenance program begins with the daily checks. See Driver's Check List on page 1-32 for these routine checks. Routine vehicle checks can help avoid many large, expensive, and time consuming repairs. The vehicle will operate better, be safer, and last longer. Neglect of recommended maintenance can void your vehicle's warranty. Some maintenance operations demand skills and equipment you may not have. For such situations, please take your vehicle to an authorized Service Center.

WARNING!

Before attempting any procedures in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Hot components can burn skin on contact. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

If the engine must be operating to inspect, be alert and cautious around the engine at all times. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

If work has to be done with the engine running, always (1) set the parking brake, (2) block the wheels, and (3) ensure that the shift lever or selector is in Neutral. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Exercise extreme caution to prevent neckties, jewelry, long hair, or loose clothing from getting caught in the fan blades or any other moving engine parts. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Disconnect the battery ground strap whenever you work on the fuel system or the electrical system. When you work around fuel, do not smoke or work near heaters or other fire hazards. Keep an approved fire extinguisher handy. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Always support the vehicle with appropriate safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. A jack is not adequate for this purpose. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

When working underneath the vehicle without appropriate safety stands but with the wheels on the ground (not supported), make sure that (1) the vehicle is on hard level ground, (2) the parking brake is applied, (3) all wheels are blocked (front and rear) and (4) remove the ignition key so that the engine cannot be started. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Never start or let the engine run in an enclosed, unventilated area. Exhaust fumes from the engine contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can be fatal if inhaled. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

The following pages contain a table of maintenance tasks with the related intervals for each task on the right side of the table. The top of the table displays a guide to a maintenance interval and its schedule. Some tasks are dependent on the vehicle application. These tasks will be shown as separate tasks and will have the words "ON HIGHWAY", "CITY DELIVERY" or "OFF-HIGHWAY" after the description. These tasks are differentiated because they are dependent on the vehicle's operating environment.

On highway is defined for applications where the vehicle is NOT used off of a paved road during normal operation.

City Delivery is defined for applications where frequent start and stopping is required during normal operation and the highway is used infrequently and for short periods of time.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Off highway is defined for applications where the vehicle may be driven off the pavement on a regular basis, even if it is an infrequent basis and/or for a brief time period.

Please contact an authorized service dealership if there are questions regarding which interval to follow. Consult the supplier for specific recommendations where discrepancies develop between these recommendations in this table and component supplier recommendations.

- Engine lubricating oil change intervals aren't listed here. Refer to your engine's operating manual for recommendations. For specific information on maintenance procedures consult your vehicle maintenance manual.
- The initial fill of drive axle lubricant must be changed before the end of the first scheduled maintenance interval. Refer to Oil Changes on page 5-48 before you put a new vehicle into service.
- The initial fill of lubricant in manual transmissions must be changed before the end of the first maintenance interval. See Fuller Transmission Lubrication on page 5-45 for specific information.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, consult the owner's manual for it that came with your vehicle to obtain lubricant check and change intervals.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Maintenance Schedule

New Vehicle Maintenance Schedule

New Vehicle Maintenance Schedule					
Operation\Frequency	First Day	After First Miles (km)			
		50 – 100 (80 – 160)	500 (800)	2,000 (3218)	3,000 –5,000 (4800 –8000)
Steering Shaft U-Bolts. (OFF-HIGHWAY) See Steering System on page 5-138.	X				
Wheel Mounting. See Wheel Mounting and Fastening on page 5-149.		X			
Front Axle U-Bolt Torque. See Front Spring Suspension U-Bolts on page 5-116.			X		
Charge Air Cooler and Air Intake Pipe Clamps, re- torque fasteners.			X		
Rear Suspension Fasteners. See Rear Suspension Fasteners on page 5-134.				X	
Transmission Lubrication. 1. For Fuller transmission, see Fuller Transmission Lubrication on page 5-45. 2. For Allison transmission, see Allison Transmission Lubrication on page 5-47. 3. For Spicer transmission, see Spicer Transmission Lubrication on page 5-47.					X
Axle Lubrication. 1. For Meritor axle, see Meritor Axle Lubrication on page 5-49. 2. For Eaton/Dana axle, see Eaton/Dana Axle Lubrication on page 5-50.					X

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Frame	Fifth Wheel	Check the kingpin lock and plate for wear and function; lubricate (NLGI #2 grease).		X		
		Inspect fifth wheel operation (shown on page 5-134)		X		
	Frame Fasteners	Check for tightness; tighten to the specified torque value as required (shown on page 5-112).		X		
	Crossmembers and Mounting Brackets	Inspect for cracks and loose fasteners. Replace or tighten to the specified torque value as required (shown on page 5-112).			X	
	Engine Mounting	Inspect engine mounts every 60,000 miles (96,560 km) (shown on page 5-107). Contact an authorized vehicle OEM dealership if engine mounts need servicing.		X		

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Front Axle (Meritor)	Total Vehicle Alignment	Check and adjust as required.	X			
	Steering knuckle spindles, thrust bearings, kingpins, drawkeys, tie rod ends, steering stops, & bushings	Inspect for wear and damage and endplay. Shim or replace as required (shown on page 5-138).			X	
	Kingpin bushings, thrust bearings, & tie rod ball ends	Lubricate with approved grease.			X	
	Drawkeys	Tighten nuts	X		X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Front Axle (Dana)	Total Vehicle Alignment	Check and adjust as required.	X			
	Kingpin bushings, thrust bearings, & tie rod ball ends (ON HIGHWAY)	Lubricate with approved grease.			X	
	Kingpin bushings, thrust bearings, & tie rod ball ends (OFF-HIGHWAY)	Lubricate with approved grease.			X	
	Steering knuckle spindles, thrust bearings, kingpins, drawkeys, tie rod ends, steering stops, & bushings (ON HIGHWAY)	Inspect for wear and damage and for endplay. Shim or replace as required.			X	
	Steering knuckle spindles, thrust bearings, kingpins, drawkeys, tie rod ends, steering stops, & bushings (OFF-HIGHWAY)	Inspect for wear and damage and for endplay. Shim or replace as required.			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Front Suspension	Front Spring	Inspect for cracked leaves, worn bushings, & excessive corrosion.			X	
	Spring Pins & Shackles	Inspect for worn parts and excessive joint clearance. Shim or replace as required.			X	
	Shock Absorbers	Inspect for leaking, body damage, and damaged or worn bushings. Replace as required. Check the shock mounting stud torque.			X	
	Spring Pins	Lubricate with approved grease.			X	
		Check for proper function.		X		
	U-bolts (ON HIGHWAY)	Check the general condition and the tightness of the nuts. Tighten the nuts to the specified torque value as required (shown on page 5-117).			X	
	U-bolts (OFF HIGHWAY)	Check the general condition and the tightness of the nuts. Tighten the U-bolts after the first day or two of operation. Then tighten the nuts to the specified torque value as required (shown on page 5-117).			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Drive Axle (Dana)	Axle Housing	Visually inspect for damage or leaks.			X	
		Check oil level. Check "cold." Torque the drain plug.			X	
		Drain the lubricant while warm. Flush each unit with clean flushing oil. Change the lubricant.	See information on page 5-50			
	Air Shift Unit	Check the lubricant level.			X	
		Remove the housing cover and drain the lubricant. Wash the parts thoroughly and dry in air.			X	
	Breather	Clean or replace.			X	
	Lube Pump (ON HIGHWAY)	Remove the magnetic strainer and inspect for wear particles. Wash in solvent and dry in air.			X	
	Lube Pump (OFF HIGHWAY)	Remove the magnetic strainer and inspect for wear particles. Wash in solvent and dry in air.			X	
	Lube Filter (ON HIGHWAY)	Change.			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS			
I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Drive Axle (Dana)	Lube Filter (OFF HIGHWAY)	Change.			X	
	Magnetic drain plug and breather (ON HIGHWAY)	Clean or replace.			X	
	Magnetic drain plug and breather (OFF HIGHWAY)	Clean or replace.			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Drive Axle (Meritor)	Axle Housing	Check the "cold" fill level at the differential carrier plug for a pinion angle of less than 7 degrees, or at the axle bowl plug for a pinion angle of greater than 7 degrees. Tighten the plug to 35-50 Lb. ft. (47-68 N.m.)			X	
		Visually inspect for damage or leaks.			X	
		Drain and replace the lubricant.	See information on page 5-48			
	Lubricant filter	Change the filter.			X	
	Breather	Check the operation. If the cap doesn't rotate freely, replace.			X	
	Input shaft & pinion shaft	Check and adjust the endplay.			X	
	Axle shaft	Tighten the rear axle flange nuts to the specified torque value.			X	
	Interaxle differential	Check the operation.			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS			
I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Rear Suspension	U-bolts	Check the torque. Tighten to specified torque value as required (shown on page 5-135).			X	
	Frame & crossmember bolts	Check the torque. Tighten to specified torque value as required (shown on page 5-112).			X	
	Mounting brackets and fasteners	Check the condition and the fastener torque. Tighten to the specified torque value as required (shown on page 5-112).			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Drum Brakes (All)	Slack adjusters	Check the push rod travel and check the control arm for cracks. Adjust at reline (shown on page 5-66).		X		
		Lubricate (NLGI #2 grease).		X		
	Brake camshaft bearing	Check for excessive camshaft paly in the axial and radial directions. Max allowable play is 0.003 in. Lubricate (NLGI #2 grease).			X	
	Brake treadle valve	Clean the area around the treadle, boot, and mounting plate. Check the pivot and mounting plate for integrity. Check the plunger boot for cracks. Lubricate roller pin, pivot pin, and plunger (NLGI #2 grease).			X	
	Brake air system	Check air lines and fittings for leaks (shown on page 5-54). Adjust routing as required to prevent chafing. Check tank mounting and condition.		X		
		Clean or replace the inline filters.			X	
	Brake lining	Inspect; replace as required.		X		

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Disc Brakes (Bendix®)	Brake pads	Inspect; replace as required.		X		
	Brake disc/rotor	Inspect for visible cracks, heat checking, galling, or scoring of surface. Check for runout (max allowable is 0.002 in.).			X	
	Caliper sliding function	Ensure caliper slides freely with no obstructions or excessive play.		X		
	Caliper slide pins	Inspect protective caps of the guide pins for damage or cracking.		X		
	System operation	Check operation; inspect as per manufacturer's service literature.	X			
Hydraulic Brakes	Brake pad lining	Inspect; replace as required. (minimum 3/16 in. thickness)		X		
	Rotor	Inspect for visible cracks, heat checking, galling, or scoring of surface.			X	
	Park Brake	Inspect for wear, cracks, or breakage. (minimum 2.5 mm (0.10 in))			X	
	Brake Fluid	Check level; change every 2 years. (DOT 3 brake fluid)		X		
Main transmission	Main transmission	Check the oil level; refill as required.	Check every 50,000 mi and refill as required.			

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Air Intake	Air intake piping, mounting, and charge air cooler	Check the system for broken pipes, leaks, joint integrity, cleanliness, and proper support (shown on page 5-106).		X		
	Air cleaner	Replace the engine intake air cleaner element (shown on page 5-104).	When required by air restriction indicator or required by the engine manufacturers operator manual.			
Clutch	Clutch linkage	Lubricate.			X	
	Clutch release bearing	Lubricate.			X	
		Inspect and adjust when necessary (no adjustment required for SOLO type clutches)			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Cooling	Hoses	Check the radiator and heater hoses for leaks.			X	
	Extended Life Coolant (ELC)	Check the freeze point (shown on page 5-81).			X	
		Check for contamination using test strips (shown on page 5-80).			X	
		Replace blank water filter if applicable.			X	
		Perform lab analysis (shown on page 5-80). If lab analysis shows coolant is unsuitable for continued use: Flush, drain, and refill (shown on page 5-80). Add ELC Extender (shown on page 5-80).			X	
		Flush, drain, and refill with new coolant (shown on page 5-80).			X	
	Fan clutch	Check for air leaks. (shown on page 5-103). Check the fan drive bearings (turn the sheave in both directions to check for worn hub bearings).			X	
	Solenoid valve	Check the fan drive for proper engagement and disengagement.			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS				
	I	A	B	C
	750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Tires & Wheels	Tires	Check inflation pressure (shown on page 5-143).	Weekly "cold" using calibrated gauge			
		Inspect for cuts, irregular wear, missing lugs, sidewall damage, etc.		X		

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS			
I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Power Steering	Reservoir	Check the fluid level (shown on page 5-52).			X	
	Reservoir	Drain, replace the filter, and refill (shown on page 5-52).				X
	Steering gear	Check the lash of the sector shaft; adjust as required.			X	
		Grease the trunnion bearing (EP NLGI #2 lithium-based, moly-filled, HD grease).			X	
		Grease the input shaft seal (EP NLGI #2 lithium-based, moly-filled, HD grease).			X	
	Power assist cylinder	Lubricate the ball joints. Inspect for leaking rod seals, damaged ball joint boots, and damage to cylinder rod or barrel.			X	
	Hoses and tubes	Check for leaks and chafing.			X	
	Steering linkage	Check all joints for excessive lash; replace as required (shown on page 5-138).			X	
	Draglink tube clamp and ball socket	Check the torque; tighten to specified torque value as required.			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Power Steering	Pitman arm clamp bolt and nut	Check the torque; tighten to specified torque value as required.			X	
	Steering intermediate shaft	Check the torque on the pinch bolt and nut.			X	
	Steering intermediate shaft U-joints (ON HIGHWAY)	Lubricate [EP NLGI #2 HD grease, +325° F to -10° F (+163° C to -23° C) range].			X	
	Steering intermediate shaft U-joints (OFF HIGHWAY or CITY DELIVERY)	Lubricate [EP NLGI #2 HD grease, +325° F to -10° F (+163° C to -23° C) range].			X	
	Draglink and tie rod arm ball sockets (ON HIGHWAY)	Lubricate (EP NLGI #2 lithium-based, moly-filled, HD grease).			X	
	Draglink and tie rod arm ball sockets (OFF HIGHWAY or CITY DELIVERY)	Lubricate (EP NLGI #2 lithium-based, moly-filled, HD grease).			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Fuel & Tanks	Fuel tanks	Inspect tanks, brackets, hoses, and fittings for correct location, tightness, abrasion damage, and leaks; repair or replace as required.		X		
	Fuel tank breathers	Check for proper function; clean the drain hoses.			X	
	Fuel tank straps	Check the strap tightness; tighten to proper torque value as required: Aluminum tank: 30 Lb. ft. (41 N.m.) Cylindrical Steel tank: 8 Lb. ft. (11 N.m.)		X		

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Driveshafts	Models SPL-90, 1710 and 1810 slip member & U-joints	Lubricate*.		X		
		Inspect.	U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.**			
	Model SPL-100 slip member & U-joints	Lubricate*.		X		
		Inspect.	U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.**			

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS			
I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Driveshafts	Models SPL-140/140HD/170/170HD/250/250HD slip members & U-joints (ON HIGHWAY & LINEHAUL)	Lubricate*.				X
		Inspect.	U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.**			
	Models SPL-140/140HD/170/170HD/250/250HD slip members & U-joints (OFF HIGHWAY)	Lubricate*.		X		
		Inspect.	U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.**			

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Driveshafts	Models SPL-140XL/170XL/ 250XL slip members and U-joints (ON HIGHWAY & LINE HAUL)	Lubricate*.	350,000 mi (560,000 km) 1st interval and then every 100,000 mi (160,00 km) after that.			
		Inspect.	U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.**			
	Models SPL-140XL/170XL/ 250XL slip members and U-joints (OFF HIGHWAY & CITY)	Lubricate*.			X	
		Inspect.	U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.**			
	*Use only Spicer Driveshaft approved lubricants when greasing Spicer U-joints.					
	**Refer to Spicer Driveshaft service manual DSSM-0100 (3264-SPL) for detailed instructions.					

5

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Battery Boxes, Tool Boxes, and Steps	Battery cables	Check the condition of the cables, cushion clamps, nylon tie straps, and routing. Replace a cushion clamp if the rubber has deteriorated. Repair or tighten terminals, and secure cables to prevent chafing. Replace damaged cables (cuts, cracks, or excessive wear) (shown on page 5-85).		X		
	Batteries (ON HIGHWAY & LINE HAUL)	Check for cracks and damage, electrolyte level, condition of terminals, and tightness of holddowns (shown on page 5-85).		X		
	Batteries (OFF-HIGHWAY)	Check for cracks and damage, electrolyte level, condition of terminals, and tightness of holddowns (shown on page 5-85).		X		
	Battery box and tray (ON HIGHWAY & LINE HAUL)	Check the box integrity. Clean the drain tube and check for acid leaks. Check condition of all equipment mounted under the box.		X		
	Battery box and tray (OFF-HIGHWAY)	Check the box integrity. Clean the drain tube and check for acid leaks. Check condition of all equipment mounted under the box.		X		
	Battery Cable Fasteners	Check battery cable fasteners and tighten as necessary to 10-15 Lb. ft. (13.6-20.3 N.m.) as specified on the battery label.		X		

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Electrical & lights	Headlamps	Check the aim and adjust as required.		X		
	Warning lights in light bar	Check at the ignition start position to verify bulbs and driver information display function (shown on page 3-11).		X		
	Turn, Stop, Reverse lights and signals	Visual check.		X		
	Alternator	Check operation and output.		X		
		Check tightness of the pulley nut.		X		
		Check the tension of the drive belt (shown on page 5-102).		X		
		Check tightness of the terminal hex nuts.		X		
	Starter	Check torque on hex nuts.		X		
	ECM connector	Check the tightness of the ECM connector.		X		
	Wheel sensors	Check for damaged sensors and connectors, and worn or frayed wires.		X		

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Electrical & lights	Fuel and diesel exhaust fluid tank sending unit	Check the mounting screws and electrical connections for worn or damaged wires and connectors.		X		
	Power supply harnesses (engine, transmission, etc.)	Check for worn or damaged insulation, corroded terminals, frayed wires, and oil or fluid leaks on the connectors or wiring.		X		
		Wash to remove excess grease.		X		
Cab structure, doors & hoods	Hood	Lubricate the lower hood pivot (only if lube fittings are present).			X	
	Hinges and latch	Lubricate with silicone spray.			X	
	Body & cab holddown bolts	Check the condition and tightness.			X	
Heating & Air Conditioning	Heater & air conditioner	Perform the checks listed shown on page 5-118.		X		
		Full operational and diagnostic check.			X	
	Condenser	Clear any debris from the front of the condenser.			X	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Aftertreat-ment System	System	Check for leaks and proper support (shown on page 5-122).		X		
	Diesel particulate filter	Clean filter.	Refer to the Engine Maintenance Manual.			
	Diesel exhaust fluid tank	Inspect the tank, straps, brackets, hoses and fittings for abrasion damage, leaks, tightness and fully engaged connectors.		X		
	Diesel exhaust fluid supply module	Replace filter.	Refer to the Engine Maintenance Manual.			

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS			
I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Air	Air compressor governor	Replace air strainer.		X		
	Air lines	Check condition and routing to prevent chafing.		X		
	System	Lubricate (shown on page 5-54).		X		
	Inline filters	Replace elements or clean with solvent.		X		
	Air dryer	Perform the checks listed (shown on page 5-54).		X		
	Air dryer (ON HIGHWAY)	Overhaul.	360,000 miles/576,000 km			
	Air dryer (OFF HIGHWAY)	Overhaul.				X

https://truckmanualshub.com/

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) INTERVALS

I	A	B	C
750 mi / or 1 month	7,500 mi / 12,000 km / 6 months	15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Anually	60,000 mi / 96,000 km

SYSTEM	COMPONENT	MAINTENANCE TASK	Recommended PM Interval			
			I	A	B	C
Engine	Basic Engine	Maintenance and service interval recommendations are detailed in the engine manufacturer's Operations and Maintenance Manual included with the vehicle. The engine manufacturer's recommendations vary depending engine model. Information is also available from authorized dealers, the engine manufacturer's authorized service centers, and the engine manufacturer's web site.				
Safety	Three-point Safety Belt System	Inspect.	20,000 miles/32,000km If the vehicle is exposed to severe environmental or working conditions, more frequent inspections may be necessary.			

5

https://truckmanualshub.com/

LUBRICANT SPECIFICATIONS

Introduction

WARNING!

Handle lubricants carefully. Vehicle lubricants (oil and grease) can be poisonous and cause death, personal injury or sickness. They can also damage the paint on the vehicle.

In this section you will find the basic information you need to do the routine lubrication your vehicle requires. Of course you will want to schedule service more frequently if you are operating under severe conditions such as extreme heat or cold, with very heavy loads, off-road, etc. For any special service requirements, consult your service manuals and your lubricant supplier. Please remember: one key to keeping your truck running at top economy and in prolonging its life is proper lubrication servicing. Neglecting this essential aspect of vehicle care can cost time and money in the long run.

CAUTION

Do not mix different types of lubricants. Mixing lubricants (oil and grease) of different brands or types could damage vehicle components; therefore, drain (or remove) old lubricants from the unit before refilling it.

Engine

Proper engine lubrication depends on the outside temperatures where you will be driving. Use the oil recommended for the conditions you are most likely to be operating in. You will find a complete engine lubrication service guide in the Engine Operation Manual that came with your vehicle. The engine operator manual contains specific maintenance tasks that you or a qualified service technician need to perform to maintain the engine.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Exhaust fumes from the engine contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. A poorly maintained, damaged, or corroded exhaust system can allow carbon monoxide to enter the cab or sleeper. Failure to properly maintain your vehicle could cause carbon monoxide to enter the cab and cause death, personal injury or serious illness.

WARNING!

Never idle your vehicle for prolonged periods of time if you sense that exhaust fumes are entering the cab. Investigate the cause of the fumes and correct it as soon as possible. If the vehicle must be driven under these conditions, drive only with the windows slightly open. Failure to repair the source of the exhaust fumes may lead to death, personal injury or serious illness.

NOTE

Keep the engine exhaust system and the vehicle's cab ventilation system properly maintained. It is recommended that the vehicle's exhaust system and cab be inspected:

- By a competent technician every 15,000 miles/ 24,000 km
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system
- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody, cab or sleeper is damaged

NOTE

Use only an exact replacement parts in Aftertreatment exhaust system. Using a noncompliant replacement part could violate emissions requirements and also void the emission system's warranty.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Pipe and Hose Clamps

Use the following table for torque specifications to check pipe and hose clamps.

Pipe and Hose Clamp Torque Values

APPLICATION	APPROVED CLAMP	TORQUE	
		Nm	Lb-In
Radiator & Heat Exchanger Hoses	Constant-Torque CT-L	10.2-12.5	90-110
Heater Hoses	Constant Tension	not required	not required
Air Intake Pipes	Hi-Torque HTM-L	11.3-14.2	100-125
Plastic Air Intake Pipes	Constant- Torque CT-L	4.5	40 (maximum)
Charge Air Intake Hoses	Flex Seal 667	7.9-11.3	70-100
	B9296	6-7	50-60
Fuel, Oil & Water Heat Exchangers (for hoses less than 9/16 diameter)	Miniature 3600L	1.1-1.7	10-15

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Master Lubrication Index

Lubricant Symbol Key	
ATF	MD3 or MERCON®-approved automatic transmission fluid
BB	High temperature ball bearing grease. Chevron SRI Mobile Grease HP, Texaco Multifax 2 or equivalent
CB	Engine oil for mild to moderate requirements
CC/CD	Engine oil for severe requirements (MIL-L-2104B /MIL-L-45199B w/ 1.85% max. sulfated ash content)
CD	Engine oil meeting API "Five engine test sequence"
CD50	SAE50W synthetic transmission fluid
CE	Engine oil meeting severe duty service requirements for direct-injection turbocharged engines
CJ-4	Engine oil for PACCAR MX and Cummins EGR engines
CL	Multipurpose chassis grease
EP	Extreme Pressure Lubricant (Lithium 12-hydroxystearate base NGLI 2)
GL	Straight mineral gear lubricant
HD	Hypoid Gear Oil, A.P.I. - GL-5, SAE 75W-90FE synthetic gear lubricant
HT	High Temperature grease (Timken Spec. 0-616)
MP	Multipurpose gear lubricant (MIL-L-2105B)
DOT3 or DOT4	Brake Fluid

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE
The responsibility for meeting these specifications, the quality of the product, and its performance in service rests with the lubricant supplier.

For oil reservoir with side filler plugs (transmission, axles, steering gear boxes, transfer cases, etc.) the oil must be level with the filler opening.

1 Improper Oil Level
2 Proper Oil Level

Use care when checking the oil level with a finger. Just because you can reach the oil level with a finger, does not mean the oil level is correct.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Component Lubrication Index	
Universal Joints	EP*
Drive Shaft Splines	CL*
Steering Column	CL
Alternator Bearing	BB*
Fan Hub	BB*
Power Steering Reservoir	ATF
Steering Drag Link	CL
Steering Knuckles	CL
Spring Pins	CL
Clutch Release Bearings	BB
Brake Shoe Anchor Pins	HT
Brake Cam Bearings	HT
Slack Adjusters	CL
Starter Bearings	CC
Turbocharger Aneroid	CC
Water Pump	BB*
Suspension Fittings (other than threaded pins & bushings)	EP
Steering Axle: Grease Fittings on Steering Arm; Tie Rod Ends; Drag Link; King Pins	EP
Steering Shaft Grease Fittings	EP

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Component Lubrication Index	
Brake Treadle Hinge and Roller	Engine oil
Lock Cylinders	Lock lubricant
Door Hinges	Not required - Teflon bushings
Door Latches & Striker Plates	Polyethylene grease stick
Door Weatherstrip	Silicone lubricant
Hub-piloted Aluminum Wheels	Coat the wheel pilot or hub pads with Freylube #3 lubricant (light colored) or Chevron Zinc lube. Do not get lubricant on the face of the wheel or the hub.
*Consult manufacturer or lubricant supplier for special details.	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fuller Transmission Lubrication

Fuller transmissions are designed so that the internal parts operate in a bath of oil circulated by the motion of gears and shafts. Grey iron parts have built-in channels where needed to help lubricate bearings and shafts. All parts will be amply lubricated if these procedures are closely followed:

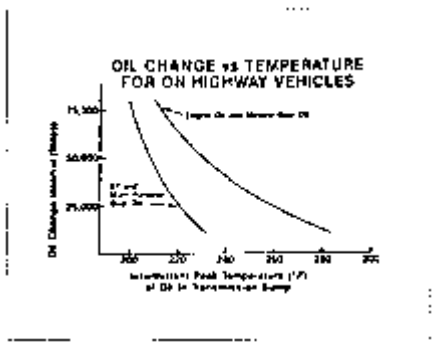
1. Maintain oil level; check it regularly.
2. Change oil regularly.
3. Use the correct grade and type of oil.
4. Buy oil from a reputable dealer.

Lubrication Change and Inspection Off-Highway Use

Refer to the Eaton Fuller transmission manual for servicing information.

Highway Use

- Refer to the Eaton Fuller transmission manual for servicing information.
- Refer to the oil change vs. temperature chart that follows for special oil change information. The "intermittent peak temperature" is the maximum temperature observed for a short time in a fully loaded vehicle performing normally.



CAUTION

Exceeding the recommended oil change intervals may be harmful to the life of the transmission and the transmission oil cooler.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Recommended Lubricants

Type	Grade (SAE)	Ambient Temperature
Heavy Duty Engine Oil MIL-L-2104B, C, or D; API - SF, or API-CD	50	Above 10° F (-12° C)
	40	Above 10° F (-12° C)
	30	Below 10° F (-12° C)
Mineral gear oil with rust and oxidation inhibitor API-GL-1	90	Above 10° F (-12° C)
	80W	Below 10° F (-12° C)
Synthetic Lubricant*	50	All
*See your dealer for approved brands.		

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Allison Transmission Lubrication

Lubrication Change and Inspection

- Refer to your transmission manual (furnished separately) for lubrication information.
- Refer to the Allison Transmission manual for servicing information.

Spicer Transmission Lubrication

It is extremely important to use the proper lubricants and maintain the correct oil levels in Spicer units. This will ensure proper lubrication and operating temperatures in these units.

Recommended Lubricants

The lubricants listed below are recommended, in order of preference, for use in all Spicer mechanical transmissions, auxiliaries, and transfer cases. Do not use extreme pressure additives such as those found in multipurpose or rear axle-type lubricants. These additives are not required in Spicer transmissions, and may in some cases create transmission problems. Multipurpose oils, as a group, have relatively poor oxidation stability, a high rate of sludge formation, and a greater tendency to react with or corrode the steel and bronze parts.

Type	Grade (SAE)	Ambient Temperature
Heavy Duty Engine Oil MIL-L-2104D or MIL-L-46152B, API-SF or API-CD (MIL-L-2104B or C or MIL-L-46152 designations are acceptable)	30, 40, or 50	Above 0° F (-18° C)
	30	Below 0° F (-18° C)
Mineral gear oil (R & O type) API-GL-1	90	Above 0° F (-18° C)
	80	Below 0° F (-18° C)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Type	Grade (SAE)	Ambient Temperature
Synthetic Engine Oil meeting MIL-L-2104D or MIL-L-46152B, API-SF or API-CD	CD50 CD30	All
*Synthetic Gear Oil Meeting MIL-2105C or API-GL5	EP75W90 EP75W140	All
*EP Gear Oils are not recommended when lubricant operating temperatures are above 230° F (110° C).		

Oil Changes

CAUTION

When adding oil, types and brands of oil should not be intermixed because of possible incompatibility, which could decrease the effectiveness of the lubrication or cause component failure.

An initial oil change and flush should be performed after the transmission has been placed in actual service. This change should be made any time after 3000 miles (4800 km) but never longer than 5000 miles (8000 km) of over-the-road service. In off-highway use, the change should be made after 24 hours but before 100 hours of service have elapsed.

Refilling

Remove all dirt around filler plug. Refill with new oil of the grade recommended for the existing season and prevailing service. Fill to the bottom of the level testing plug positioned on the side of the transmission. **Do not** overfill the transmission. Overfilling usually results in oil breakdown due to excessive heat and aeration from the churning action of the gears. Early breakdown of the oil will result in heavy varnish and sludge deposits that plug up oil ports and build up on the splines and bearings. Overflow of oil can also escape onto clutch or parking brakes. When adding oil, **do not** mix different types of oil.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Meritor Axle Lubrication

NOTE
Axles utilized in 100% off-highway use are not eligible for Meritor's Advanced Lube Rear Drive Axle program.

Under Meritor's Advanced Lube Rear Drive Axle program, the axles listed below are exempt from an initial lubricant change:

AVAILABLE ADVANCED LUBE AXLES			
RS-17-145	RS-23-180	RT-40-145	RT-44-145P
RS-19-145	RS-26-180	RT-40-145P	RT-46-160
RS-21-145	RS-30-180	SQ-100A	RT-46-160P
RS-23-160	RT-34-145	SQ-100AP	RT-52-160
RS-23-161	RT-34-145P	RT-44-145	RT-52-160P

Meritor rear axles that do not appear on the list above will continue to require an initial drain at 3000-5000 miles (4800-8000 km).

- Refer to the Meritor Field Maintenance Manual for a particular axle for lubricant specifications.
- See your dealer for Meritor-approved lubricant brands.
- Refer to the following chart for lubricant change intervals:

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Application	Type Of Lubricant	Mileage Interval
On Highway	Synthetic	240,000 mi. (384,000 km)
	Synthetic with Pump and Filter	500,000 mi. (800,000 km)
	Mineral Base	120,000 mi. (192,000 km)
City Delivery	Synthetic	120,000 mi. (192,000 km)
	Synthetic with Pump and Filter	240,000 mi. (384,000 km)
	Mineral Base	120,000 mi. (192,000 km)
Off Highway	Synthetic	120,000 mi. (192,000 km)
	Synthetic with Pump and Filter	120,000 mi. (192,000 km)
	Mineral Base	120,000 mi. (192,000 km)

- Change the lubricant filter every 120,000 miles (192,000 km). Top off the lubricant level with a similar lubricant.

Eaton/Dana Axle Lubrication

- The original mineral-based lubricant must be drained within 3000-5000 miles (4800-8000 km) on all Eaton axles. This initial change is very important because it flushes out break-in contaminants that might otherwise cause premature wear.
- No initial drain is required on Eaton axles that are factory filled with an Eaton-approved synthetic lubricant.
- Mineral-based lubes must be drained within the first 5000 miles (8000 km) if converting to an Eaton-approved synthetic lube.
- Change the lubricant within the first 5000 miles (8000 km) of operation after a carrier head replacement, regardless of the lubricant type.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Refer to the Eaton Field Maintenance Manual for a particular axle for lubricant specifications.
- See your dealer for Eaton-approved lubricant brands.
- Refer to the chart below for lubricant change interval.

Type of Lubricant	On-Highway Mi. (km)	Maximum Change Interval	On/Off Highway Severe Service Mi. (km)	Maximum Change Interval
Mineral-Based	120,000 (192,000)	Yearly	60,000 (96,000)	Yearly
Eaton-Approved Synthetic	240,000 (384,000)	2 Years	120,000 (192,000)	Yearly
Eaton-Approved Synthetic in axle with extended drain interval option	350,000 (560,000)			

Wheel Bearing Lubrication

Oil-lubricated Driven Hubs

Use hypoid oil, A.P.I.-GL-5 SAE 75W-90FE synthetic gear lubricant or equivalent. A minimum of 1 quart (921 ml) of oil is required for proper lubrication of each drive hub. Add oil through the filler hole in the hub; if none, add oil through the differential filler hole. (Note: Remember to replace vent plug or threaded filler plug when done.) Allow time for the oil to seep through the bearings when initially filling a hub. Maintain the differential oil level by adding oil until its surface is even with the bottom of the filler hole (see illustration on page 5-42).

Oil-lubricated Nondriven Hubs

Use CD50 synthetic transmission fluid SAE 50W or equivalent. A minimum of 9 oz. (270 ml) of lubricant is required for proper lubrication of an LMS™ hub; 10-13 oz. (295-400 ml) is required for a non-LMS hub, depending on wheel design. Allow time for the fluid to seep through the bearings when initially filling a hub. When properly filled, the

https://truckmanualshub.com/

fluid level will lie between the fluid level line and 1/4" above the line.

NOTE
Remember to replace vent plug when done.

Universal Joint Lubrication

Refer to the Spicer Universal Joints and Driveshafts service manual and lubrication specifications.

Steering Gear Lubrication

Fluid Refill

The following recommendations are for general purpose steering systems (both TRW and Sheppard).

- For normal temperatures, use Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF) Type E or F or Dexron® III.
- For cold temperatures of -22º F (-30º C) and above use ATF Type A.
- For extremely cold temperatures between -22º F (-30º C) and -40º F (-40º C) use ATF Type B.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Inspection

NOTE

Before removing reservoir cover, wipe outside of cover so that no dirt can fall into the reservoir.

1. Check the fluid level; add fluid if required.
2. Check fluid for contamination, discoloration, or burnt smell; correct source of such problems before replacing fluid & filter.

CAUTION

When adding fluid, be sure to use fluid of the same type. While many fluids have the same description and intended purpose, they should not be mixed due to incompatible additives. Mixing incompatible fluids may lead to equipment damage.

If incompatible (insoluble) fluids are mixed in a power steering system, air bubbles can be produced at the interface of the two fluids. This can cause cavitation, which reduces the lubrication between moving parts in the gear. This could result in worn components.

The mixture of two different fluids, although harmless to individual internal components, may initiate a chemical reaction that produces a new compound that will attack seals and other internal components.

Do not mix different fluids.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

AIR SYSTEM

Introduction

WARNING!

Do not attempt to modify, alter, repair or disconnect any component of the air system. Repairs or modifications to the air system, other than what is described in this section, should only be performed by an authorized dealer. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

WARNING!

Prior to the removal of any air system component, always block and hold the vehicle by a secure means other than the vehicle's own brakes. Depleting air system pressure may cause the vehicle to roll unexpectedly resulting in an accident causing death or personal injuries. Keep hands away from chamber push rods and slack adjusters, they may apply as system pressure drops.

WARNING!

After completing any repairs to the air system, always test for air leaks, and check the brakes for safe operation before putting the vehicle in service. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Never connect or disconnect a hose or line containing air pressure. It may whip as air escapes. Never remove a component or pipe plug unless you are certain all system pressure has been depleted. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Never exceed recommended air pressure and always wear safety glasses when working with air pressure. Never look into air jets or direct them at anyone. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Never attempt to disassemble a component until you have read and understood recommended procedures. Some components contain powerful springs and injury can result if not properly disassembled. Use only proper tools and observe all precautions pertaining to use of those tools. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Completely bypassing a Bendix® AD-IS air dryer will bypass the system's pressure protection valves. This could lead to loss of air pressure or damage to the vehicle's air system, which could cause an accident involving death or personal injury. Always adhere to the manufacturer's procedure if it is necessary in an emergency to temporarily bypass an AD-IS-series air dryer. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

The operation of the vehicle's braking system and many vehicle accessories depends upon the storage and application of a high-pressure air supply.

Your vehicle's compressor takes outside air and compresses it, usually to 100-120 psi (689-827 kPa). The compressed air then goes to the reservoirs to be stored until needed. When you operate your air brakes, the stored compressed air flows into the chambers where it is used to apply your truck and trailer brakes. That is why, when you push down on your brake pedal, you don't feel the same amount of pressure on the pedal that you do when you apply the brakes on your car. All you are doing on your truck is opening an air valve to allow air to flow into the brake chambers.

Contamination of the air supply system is the major cause of problems in air-operated components such as brake valves, and suspension height control valves. To keep contaminants to the lowest possible level, follow these maintenance procedures.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

If the supply and service tanks are not drained at the recommended frequency, water could enter the air lines and valves. This could cause corrosion or blockage, which could compromise the brake system safety and potentially cause an accident involving death or personal injury.

Daily

- Drain moisture from the supply and service air tanks.
- Operate air devices to circulate lubricants within the unit.

Periodically

- Clean filter screens ahead of the valves by removing the screens and soaking them in solvent. Blow them dry with pressurized air before reinstalling them.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Twice a Year

- Maintain the air compressor to prevent excessive oil bypass. See your maintenance manual for details.
- Replace worn seals in valves and air motors as they are needed.

Air Dryer

The function of the air dryer is to collect and remove air system contaminants in solid, liquid and vapor form before they enter the brake system. It provides clean, dry air to the components of the brake system, which increases the life of the system and reduces maintenance costs.

> **NOTE**
>
> Because no two vehicles operate under identical conditions, maintenance and maintenance intervals will vary. Experience is a valuable guide in determining the best maintenance interval for any one particular operation.

Every 900 operating hours or 25,000 miles (40,200 km) or every three (3) months check for moisture in the air brake system by opening air tanks, drain cocks, or valves and checking for presence of water.

> **NOTE**
>
> A small amount of oil in the system may be normal and should not, in itself, be considered a reason to replace the desiccant cartridge. Oil stained desiccant can function adequately.

A tablespoon of water found in the air tank would point to the need for a desiccant cartridge change. However, the following conditions can also cause water accumulation and should be considered before replacing the desiccant cartridge.

- Air usage is exceptionally high and not normal for a highway vehicle. This may be due to accessory air demands or some unusual air requirement that does not allow the compressor to load and unload (compressing

https://truckmanualshub.com/

and non-compressing cycle) in a normal fashion or it may be due to excessive leaks in the air system.

- In areas where more than a 30° F (17° C) range of temperature occurs in one day, small amounts of water can accumulate in the air brake system due to condensation. Under these conditions, the presence of small amounts of moisture is normal and should not be considered as an indication that the dryer is not performing properly.
- An outside air source has been used to charge the air system. This air did not pass through the drying bed.

Overhaul

Maintenance intervals typical for on-highway operation would be 2 - 3 years, 350,000 miles or 10,800 hours.

Maintenance intervals typical for high duty cycle usage such as transit bus, refuse hauler, dump truck, cement mixers and off-highway operation would be 1 year, 100,000 miles or 3,600 hours.

> **NOTE**
>
> Review the warranty policy before performing any maintenance procedures. An extended warranty may be voided if unauthorized maintenance is performed during this period.

Bendix® AD-IS Series Air Dryer

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Bendix® AD-IS series air dryer. Any air dryer replacement should be made with an identical component.

> **WARNING!**
>
> If a different air dryer brand or model is installed on the vehicle other than what was originally installed, it could cause the air system to not perform correctly unless the full air system design is reviewed and modifications made to comply with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) 121 - Air Brake Systems. Failure to abide by this warning and maintain compliance to FMVSS 121 could cause loss of vehicle control and may lead to death or serious personal injury.

The AD-IS Series air dryer has incorporated into its design various

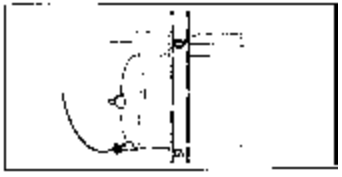
https://truckmanualshub.com/

components that have typically been installed separately on the vehicle (see below for components/areas affected).

- Pressure protection valves
- Safety valve
- Governor and plumbing
- Plumbing of the front and rear service air tanks
- Plumbing to accessory systems

These components are required to meet the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS 121 - Air Brake Systems). As the Warning above states, any other type of air dryer installed in the place of an AD-IS Series will require changes, modifications and/or additions to your vehicle's air system to maintain compliance with FMVSS 121.

Air Tanks



To eject moisture from the air system tanks, pull the line that is connected to the moisture ejection valve. Continue pulling until the air comes out free of water.

Daily: The supply and service air tanks, must be drained on a daily basis. Operate air devices daily to circulate lubricants within the unit.

Periodically: Clean filter screens ahead of the valves by removing the screens and soaking them in solvent. Blow them dry with pressurized air before reinstalling them.

WARNING!

If the supply and service air tanks are not drained at the recommended frequency, water could enter the air lines and valves. This could cause corrosion or blockage, which could compromise the brake system safety and potentially cause an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Do not use penetrating oil, brake fluid, or wax-based oils in the air system. These fluids may cause severe damage to air system components.

- Maintain the air compressor to prevent excessive oil bypass.
- Replace worn seals in valves and air motors as they are needed.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Your authorized dealer carries rebuild kits for most units.

Air Gauges and Air Leaks

Your vehicle comes with air pressure gauges for two separate systems, Primary and Secondary: the Primary gauge indicates pressure in the rear braking system; the Secondary gauge indicates pressure in the front braking system. Each gauge indicates the amount of air pressure in pounds per square inch (psi).

WARNING!

Do not operate the vehicle if leakage in the air system is detected. Conduct the following procedure and contact an authorized dealer (or any other properly equipped service center) if a leak is detected. Failure to check the brakes or follow these procedures could cause a system failure, increasing the risk of an accident and may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

If the light and alarm do not turn off at start-up, do not try to drive the vehicle until the problem is found and fixed. If the pressure in either or both systems is too low for normal brake operation, i.e., the pointer of one gauge falls below 65 psi (448 kPa), a warning light on the gauge will glow and the audible alarm will sound.

NOTE

Park brakes lock up at 60 psi (414 kPa), the audible alarm will sound at 65 psi (448 kPa).

Primary Air Pressure Gauge

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Secondary Air Pressure Gauge

Follow the procedure below to check the compressed air system for leaks:

1. Periodically, or after maintenance or replacement of air system components:
2. Build up air pressure in the system to the governor cutout point or until 120 psi (827 kPa) is reached.
3. Stop the engine and release the service brakes.
4. Without applying the brake pedal, observe the rate of air pressure drop. This rate should not exceed 2.0 psi (14 kPa) per minute.
5. Start the engine and build up the air pressure again.
6. Stop the engine, and apply the brakes fully. Apply the brake pedal and hold it down for five minutes. The pressure drop should not exceed 3.0 psi (21 kPa) per minute.
7. If you detect excessive leakage (air pressure loss greater than 3.0 psi (21 kPa) after five minutes of brake application), a leakage test should be made at the air line connections and at all air brake control units. These tests should determine where air is escaping.

Air Compressor

Operation

All compressors, regardless of make or model, run continuously while the engine is running. System pressure is controlled by the governor. The governor acts in conjunction with the unloading mechanism in the compressor cylinder block to start and stop compression of air. The compressor is unloaded when the system pressure reaches 120 psi (827 kPa) and compression is reestablished when system pressure falls to 100 psi (690 kPa).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Preventive Maintenance

The following service checks are provided for your information only and should be performed by a certified mechanic. Contact your dealer or the engine manufacturer's Maintenance Manual for further information on servicing air compressors.

After completing any repairs to the air system, always test for air leaks, and check the brakes for safe operation before putting the vehicle in service.

Below is a list of areas to maintain for the air compressor:

- Inspect compressor air filter element, if so equipped, and replace element if clogged. Check compressor mounting and drive for alignment and belt tension. Adjust if necessary.
- Remove compressor discharge valve cap nuts and check for presence of excessive carbon. If excessive carbon is found, clean or replace the compressor cylinder head. Also, check compressor discharge line for carbon, and clean or replace the discharge line if necessary.
- Disassemble compressor and thoroughly clean and inspect all parts. Repair or replace all worn or damaged parts, or replace compressor with a factory exchange unit.

CAUTION

When draining the engine cooling system is required, to prevent damage from freezing, the compressor must also be drained at the cylinder head and block. Engine damage could occur if the cooling system is not periodically drained and maintained. See Cooling System on page 5-80 for further information.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

BRAKE SYSTEM

Brake Adjustment

WARNING!

Do not work on the brake system without the parking brake set and wheels chocked securely. If the vehicle is not secured to prevent uncontrolled vehicle movement, it could roll and cause death, serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

To operate your vehicle safely and profitably, you need some understanding of its brake systems. For more on brakes, see the Index, under Brakes.

Brake adjustment and brake balance must be set carefully to (1) make the most efficient use of the forces available for braking and (2) allow equal stopping forces at all wheels.

CAUTION

The air brake system of this vehicle was configured for ONE of the following operations: tractor or truck, and complies with the respective portions of FMVSS 121. A tractor shall not be operated or configured as a truck, nor shall a truck be operated or configured as a tractor, without significant modifications to the air brake system in order to retain compliance with FMVSS 121. Contact your dealer for instructions.

Once a brake system is set to specifications, changing any one of its components or any combination of components may cause the system to not work as well. All parts have to work together to perform as they should. Any replacement components in your brake system should be exactly equal to the original components. Any changes from the original specifications can affect the whole system. All of the following areas are interrelated and must conform to original specifications:

- Tire Size
- Drum brakes
  - a. Cam Radius
  - b. Wedge Angle
  - c. Drum Radius
  - d. Brake Linings
  - e. Brake Chambers
  - f. Slack Adjusters
- Disc Brakes
  - a. Disc Rotors

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Do not use any replacement part in the brake system unless it conforms exactly to original specifications. A nonconforming part in your vehicle's brake system could cause a malfunction resulting in an accident causing death or personal injury. Sizes and types are so related to one another that a seemingly unimportant change in one may result in a change in how well the brakes work for you on the road. If parts do not work together properly, you could lose control of your vehicle, which could cause a serious accident.

All vehicle operators should check their brakes regularly.

WARNING!

Do not use brake linings with a thickness below the specified minimum. Such linings will have lining rivets exposed that can damage the brake drum and reduce brake efficiency, which could cause death, personal injury or system failure.

Air Disc Brakes

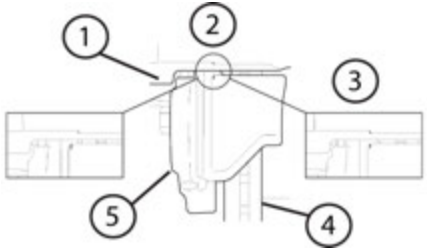
Have brake pads inspected by a qualified mechanic for wear at regular intervals according to the Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12. In severe service or off-highway applications inspect the linings more frequently.

Regularly inspect for pad/rotor wear:

- Park on level ground and chock the wheels.
- Temporarily release the parking brakes.
- Compare the relative position of two notches; one located on the caliper and the other on the carrier. See the illustration below to determine if the brakes require a detailed inspection by a qualified mechanic.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Have a qualified mechanic perform a detailed inspection if the notches are not found. The pads and rotors should be measured and compared against the manufacturers specifications located in the brake manufacturer's service manual.



Caliper Detail

1. Brake Caliper Assembly
2. Location of Inspection Grooves
3. Notches Line-Up (Time to schedule inspection of Pads and Rotors)
4. Brake Rotor
5. Brake Carrier Assembly

Regularly inspect caliper for Running Clearance:

- Stop the vehicle on level ground and let the brakes cool down. Hot brake calipers can burn skin on contact.
- Chock the wheels.
- Temporarily release the parking brakes.
- Grab the caliper and move it. This movement is Running Clearance.
- Proper Running Clearance is 0.08 inch (2 mm) of movement of the brake caliper (approximately the thickness of a nickel) in the inboard/outboard direction.
- Have a qualified mechanic provide further inspection if the caliper does not move or appears to move more than the specified clearance.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Drum Brakes

Have brake drum linings and disc brake pads inspected by a qualified mechanic for wear at regular intervals according to the maintenance schedule. In severe service or off-highway applications inspect the linings more frequently.

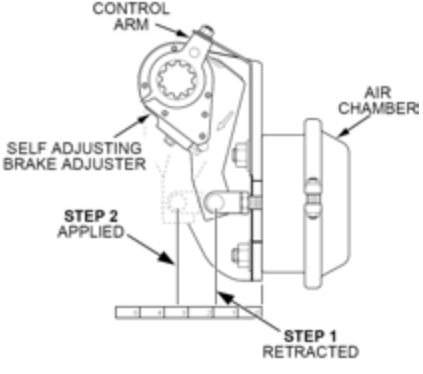
Automatic Slack Adjusters

Periodically check the Brake Chamber Stroke. Replace the slack adjuster if proper stroke cannot be maintained.

Operational checks of automatic slack adjusters

- Measure brake chamber stroke with the spring brake released and the air pressure no less than 100 psi (690 kPa).
- Brake Chamber Stroke is the difference between the applied and the retracted position of the air chamber pushrod.
- A correctly installed and functioning auto slack adjuster will produce the following strokes:

Chamber Type	Stroke
36 (rear brakes)	1-1/2" - 2-1/4" (38 - 57 mm)
30 (rear brakes)	1-1/2" - 2" (38 - 51 mm)
16, 20 & 24 (front brakes)	1" - 1-3/4" (25.4 - 44.4 mm)



Brake Chamber Stroke

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Manual adjustment of automatic slack adjusters is a dangerous practice that could have serious consequences. It gives the operator a false sense of security about the effectiveness of the brakes. Contact the Service Department at your dealership if the stroke exceeds the above specifications. A stroke exceeding these values may indicate a problem with the slack adjuster or the brake foundation.

Hydraulic Brake System

To operate your vehicle safely, you need some understanding of its brake systems. Brake adjustment and brake balance must be set carefully to allow equal stopping forces at all wheels. Tires are also a very important part of the whole system. How fast you can stop depends on how much friction there is between the road and your tires.

Introduction

To operate your vehicle safely, you need some understanding of its brake systems. Brake adjustment and brake balance must be set carefully to allow equal stopping forces at all wheels. Tires are also a very important part of the whole system. How fast you can stop depends on how much friction there is between the road and your tires.

All of the following areas are interrelated and must conform to original specifications:

- wheel size
- tire size
- brake pads
- brake rotors
- front wheel bearings
- front end alignment
- parking brake drum radius

Once a brake system is set to specifications, changing any one of its components or any combination of components may degrade the system. All parts have to work together to perform as they should.

Your brake system is hydraulically operated. Refer to the section titled Service Brake Component Inspection

https://truckmanualshub.com/

on page 5-69 for more information on inspecting the brakes.

Any replacement components in the brake system must meet the specifications of the original components. Any changes from the original specifications can affect the performance of the entire system.

WARNING!

Do not use any replacement part in the brake system unless it conforms exactly to original specifications. A nonconforming part in your vehicle's brake system could cause a malfunction resulting in an injury accident. Consult you local dealer for suitable replacement parts.

WARNING!

Do not work on the brake system without the parking brake set, the keys removed from the vehicle, and wheels chocked securely. If the vehicle is not properly secured to prevent inadvertent vehicle movement, it could roll and cause serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

- Use wood blocks (4 in. X 4 in. X 6 in. or larger) against the front and rear surfaces of the tires. Be sure the vehicle cannot move.

Brake Fluid Check and Refill

WARNING!

Wear protective clothing when handling hydraulic fluid. It is mildly toxic and can cause skin and eye irritation.

WARNING!

Use only the type of hydraulic fluid specified. Do not use or mix different types of hydraulic fluid. The wrong hydraulic fluid will damage the rubber parts of the brake system which may lead to loss of braking and possibly cause serious personal injury.

CAUTION

Hydraulic brake systems use two distinct and incompatible fluids. Power steering fluid is used in the hydraulic brake booster system. Brake fluid is used in the master cylinder and brake pipes. Do not mix these fluids when replenishing the system or seal damage can result.

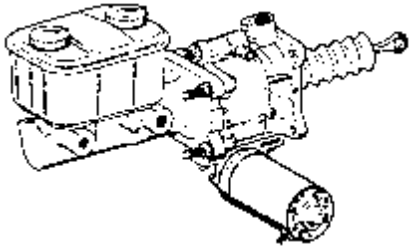
CAUTION

Hydraulic brake fluid may damage painted surfaces of the vehicle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Make sure that the fluid level registers on or above the fluid level mark molded on the reservoir - add more if necessary, as follows:

1. Remove each reservoir cap and extract the rubber diaphragm from each reservoir.



Booster and Master Cylinder Assembly

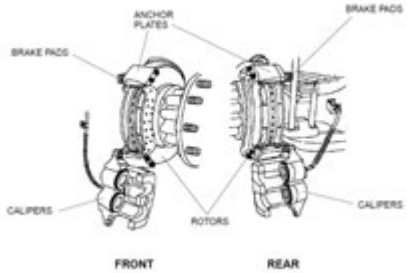
2. Fill each reservoir with clean hydraulic fluid of the approved specification (DOT 3 brake fluid).
3. Insert the rubber diaphragms into the reservoirs.
4. To prevent leakage from the reservoirs, ensure that the seal in each reservoir cap is in good condition before refitting the cap.

WARNING!

If the brake fluid reservoir requires an excessive amount of hydraulic fluid, the complete system must be inspected for leaks and repaired if necessary (consult your nearest Peterbilt dealer). Failure to keep the brake system in good repair may lead to loss of braking and possibly cause serious personal injury.

Service Brake Component Inspection

Remove each wheel to inspect the brake components.



System Components

CAUTION

When replacing disc brake pads, be sure to use the same lining material on both axles. Mixing lining types can result in unbalanced braking, increased pad wear, or degraded stopping performance. Consult your nearest Peterbilt dealer.

Disc brake pads - Visually inspect all brake pad linings. Brake pads should be replaced when the remaining lining reaches 3⁄16 inch thickness or

https://truckmanualshub.com/

less. It is recommended that all disc brake pads be replaced at the same time since this will maintain balanced braking. At a minimum, replace all disc brake pads on one axle, both ends, at the same time.

Calipers - Visually inspect calipers for brake fluid leakage, damaged or defective pistons or piston boots. If there is evidence of leakage, damage, or other defects the caliper should be replaced or repaired.

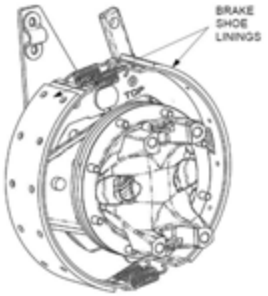
Disc brake rotors - Visually inspect rotors for scoring, warping, cracks, bluing or heat spots or other damage or defects. If signs of damage or defects are found, the rotor(s) should be resurfaced or replaced in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's recommended service procedure.

Anchor plates - Visually inspect anchor plates for worn or damaged slippers, damaged or dislodged guide pin boots or other defects. If signs of wear, damage or defects are found, the anchor plate(s) should be repaired or replaced.

Parking Brake Component Inspection

NOTE
If you are not properly trained to perform brake inspections or service, take your vehicle to your nearest Peterbilt dealer.

Visually inspect brake shoe lining for wear, cracks, or breakage. If linings are worn down to 2.5 mm (0.10 in), they must be replaced. Inspect brake drum for deep scores, heat spots, cracks, or damage. Replace if needed.



https://truckmanualshub.com/

CAB

Exterior Maintenance

Painted Surfaces

Wash painted surfaces frequently to remove grime and caustic deposits which may stain the finish. See Cleaning, Protecting, and Weather Stripping on page 5-72.

Chrome and Aluminum Surfaces

To prevent rust, keep chromed parts clean and protected with wax at all times, especially in winter conditions where the roads are salted.

- If necessary, use a commercial chrome cleaner to remove light rust.
- Chrome surfaces are best cleaned with fresh water. Wipe dry to preserve their luster. A commercial chrome cleaner will remove light rust. After cleaning, wax flat surfaces and apply a thin coat of rust preventive lubricant around bolts or other fasteners.
- Clean aluminum wheels and bumpers with warm water. Tar remover will get rid of heavy deposits of road grime. To prevent spotting, wipe aluminum surfaces dry after washing.
- Under corrosive conditions, such as driving on salted roads, clean aluminum parts with steam or high pressure water from a hose. A mild soap solution will help. Rinse thoroughly.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Tail Pipe Surface Cleaning

WARNING!

Always allow hot surfaces to cool down before attempting to work near them. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

To maintain your quality finish, wash with a soft cloth, mild soap and water or glass cleaner. A non-abrasive chrome polish (e.g. Windex®) can be used sparingly on hard to clean areas. Do Not clean your high heat chrome using scouring pads, abrasive chrome polish, highly acidic chemical cleaners or any other abrasive cleaners.

Stainless Steel

Even high quality stainless steel parts can rust under prolonged exposure to salt water, especially when the salt-laden moisture is held against the metal surface by road grime. It is, therefore, important to frequently clean salty moisture and grime from stainless steel surfaces.

- If surface rust is encountered, wash the surface and use a commercial polishing compound to clean off the rust, followed by a coating of wax.
- Never use steel wool when cleaning stainless steel because minute particles of the steel wool can embed in the surface of the stainless steel and cause rust staining.

Cleaning, Protecting and Weather Stripping

Frequent washings of the vehicle are required to remove grime and contaminants that can stain and oxidize paint and accelerate corrosion of plated and polished metal surfaces.

Waxing offers added protection against staining and oxidation. But to allow enough time for your truck's finish to cure, wait about 30 days after the date of manufacture before waxing. Do not apply wax in the hot sun and do not friction burn the paint with a buffing machine.

Occasionally spray weather-stripping on doors and windows with silicone compound to help preserve resiliency. This is especially useful in freezing weather to prevent doors and windows from sticking shut with ice.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Vehicle Cleaning

Precautions

WARNING!

Handle cleaning agents carefully. Cleaning agents may be poisonous. Keep them out of the reach of children. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Do not use gasoline, kerosene, naphtha, nail polish remover or other volatile cleaning fluids. They may be toxic, flammable or hazardous in other ways. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Do not clean the underside of chassis, fenders wheel covers, etc. without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Moisture, ice, and road salt on brakes may affect braking efficiency. Test the brakes carefully after each vehicle wash. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

- Observe all caution labels.
- Always read directions on the container before using any product.
- Do not use any solution that can damage the body paint.
- Most chemical cleaners are concentrates which require dilution.
- Only use spot removing fluids in well ventilated areas.
- Any vehicle is subjected to deterioration from industrial fumes, ice, snow, corrosive road salt, etc., to name just a few causes. A well-cared-for vehicle can look like new many years later. Regular and correct care will contribute to maintaining the beauty and the value of your vehicle.

Your dealer has a number of vehicle-care products and can advise you on which ones to use for cleaning the exterior and interior of your vehicle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

CAUTION

Do not aim the water jet directly at door locks or latch. Tape the key holes to prevent water from seeping into the lock cylinders. Water in lock cylinders should be removed with compressed air. To prevent locks from freezing in the winter, squirt glycerin or lock deicer into the lock cylinders.

Washing the Exterior

1. Begin by spraying water over the dry surface to remove all loose dirt before applying the car wash and wax solution.
   Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunshine.
   Do not spray water directly into the cab vents.
2. Using soapy water, wash the vehicle with a clean soft cloth or a soft brush made for automotive cleaning.
   Use cool or warm water and a mild, household type soap. Strong industrial detergents and cleaning agents are not recommended.
   Do not use stiff brushes, paper towels, steel wool, or abrasive cleaning compounds because they will scratch painted, plated, and polished metal surfaces.
3. Rinse surfaces frequently while washing to flush away dirt that might scratch the finishes during the washing operation.
4. Wipe everything dry with a chamois to avoid water spots.
   To prevent water spotting, dry off the cosmetic surfaces with a clean cloth or chamois.
5. Remove road tar with an automotive type tar remover or mineral spirits.
6. After cleaning and drying, apply a quality automotive wax.

NOTE

To allow enough time for your truck's finish to cure, wait at least thirty days after the date of manufacture before waxing.

- Do not apply wax in the hot sun.
- Never dust off dry surfaces with a cloth because it will scratch the finishes.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Cleaning the Chassis

- Hose dirt and grime from the entire chassis. Then, if an oil leak develops, you will be able to detect it easier.
- Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated corrosion (rust) can occur on underbody parts such as fuel lines, frames, floor pan, and exhaust system, even though they have been provided with corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the under body with plain water. Be sure to clean any area where mud and other debris can collect. Sediment packed in closed areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. If desired, your dealer can do this service for you.

Cleaning Interior Vinyl and Upholstery

- Wipe vinyl upholstery and lining with a good commercial upholstery cleaner. Do not use acetone or lacquer thinner.
- Clean fabric upholstery with upholstery shampoo specially formulated for this purpose. Follow instructions on the container.

Safety Restraint System - Inspection

The seat belt system, including webbing, buckles, latches, and mounting hardware, endures heavy use in heavy-duty vehicles, much more than seat belt systems in passenger cars. All users should be aware of the factors contributing to this heavy use and reduced belt life.

WARNING!

Failure to properly inspect and maintain restraint systems can lead to injury or loss of life. Without periodic inspection and maintenance to detect unsafe conditions, seat restraint components can wear out or not protect you in an accident.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Factors contributing to reduced seat belt life:

- Heavy trucks typically accumulate twice as many miles as the average passenger car in a given time period.
- Seat and cab movement in trucks causes almost constant movement of the belt due to ride characteristics and seat design. The constant movement of the belt inside the restraint hardware and the potential for the belt to come in contact with the cab and other vehicle parts, contributes to the wear of the entire system.
- Environmental conditions, such as dirt and ultraviolet rays from the sun, will reduce the life of the seat belt system.

Due to these factors, the three-point safety belt system installed in your vehicle requires thorough inspection every 20,000 miles (32,000 km). If the vehicle is exposed to severe environmental or working conditions, more frequent inspections may be necessary.

Any seat belt system that shows cuts, fraying, extreme or unusual wear, significant discoloration due to UV (ultraviolet) exposure, abrasion to the seat belt webbing, or damage to the buckle, latch plate, retractor hardware or any other obvious problem should be replaced immediately, regardless of mileage.

WARNING!

It is important to remember that any time a vehicle is involved in an accident, the entire seat belt system must be replaced. Unexposed damage caused by the stress of an accident could prevent the system from functioning properly the next time it is needed. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Inspection Guidelines

Follow these guidelines when inspecting for cuts, fraying, extreme or unusual wear of the webbing, and damage to the buckle, retractor, hardware, or other factors. Damage to these areas indicates that belt system replacement is necessary.

WARNING!

Replace the entire belt system (retractor and buckle side) if replacement of any one part is necessary. Unexposed damage to one or more components could prevent the system from functioning properly the next time it is needed. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

1. Check the web wear in the system. The webbing must be closely examined to determine if it is coming into contact with any sharp or rough surfaces on the seat or other parts of the cab interior. These areas are typical places where the web will experience cutting or abrasion. Cuts, fraying, or excessive wear would indicate the need for replacement of the seat belt system.
2. The pillar web guide (D-loop) is the area where almost constant movement of the seat belt webbing occurs because of relative movement between the seat and cab.
3. Check the Comfort Clip for cracks or possible damage and check for proper operation.
4. Check buckle and latch for proper operation and to determine if latch plate is worn, deformed, or damaged.
5. Inspect the retractor web storage device, which is mounted on the floor of the vehicle, for damage. The retractor is the heart of the occupant restraint system and can often be damaged if abused, even unintentionally. Check operation to ensure that it is not locked up and that it spools out and retracts webbing properly.
6. If tethers are used, be sure they are properly attached to the seat and, if adjustable, that they are adjusted in accordance with installation instructions. Tethers must also be inspected for web wear and proper tightness of mounting hardware.
7. Mounting hardware should be evaluated for corrosion, and for tightness of bolts and nuts.
8. Check web in areas exposed to ultraviolet rays from the sun. If the color of the web in these areas is gray to light brown, the physical strength of the web may have deteriorated due to exposure to

https://truckmanualshub.com/

the sun's ultraviolet rays. Replace the system.

Seat Belt Inspection Points

1 Web cut or frayed or extremely worn at latch area.
2 Web cut or frayed at D-loop web guide.
3 Comfort Clip cracked or damaged.
4 Buckle casting broken.
5 Retractor Web Storage for damage. (located behind trim panel)
6 Tethers for web wear and proper tightness of mounting hardware.
7 Mounting hardware for corrosion, proper tightness of bolts and nuts.
8 Web for deterioration, due to exposure to the sun

WARNING!

Failure to adjust tether belts properly can cause excessive movement of the seat in an accident. Tether belts should be adjusted so that they are taut when the seat is in its most upward and forward position. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

Once the need for replacement of the seat belt has been determined, be certain it is only replaced with an authorized PACCAR Parts replacement seat belt.

If the inspection indicates that any part of the seat belt system requires replacement, the entire system must be replaced. An installation guide is attached to every replacement belt. Utilize the proper guide for your type of seat, and follow the instructions very closely. It is vitally important that all components be reinstalled in the same position as the original components that were removed and that the fasteners be torqued to specification. This will maintain the design integrity of the mounting points for the seat belt assembly. Contact your dealer if you have any questions concerning seat belt replacement.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Windshield Wiper/Washer

Check wiper blades annually or every 60,000 miles (96,000 km). Anco 18-inch (450mm) wiper blades are recommended.

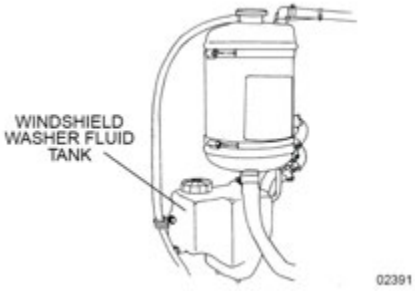
The windshield washer tank is located inside the engine compartment below the radiator expansion tank. Check the windshield washing fluid level weekly. If necessary, fill to top.

CAUTION
If the electric pump is operated for a long period (more than 15 seconds) with a dry reservoir, the pump rotor may be damaged.

Clean all inside and outside windows regularly. Use an alcohol- based cleaning solution and wipe dry with either a lintfree or a chamois cloth. Avoid running the wiper blades over a dry windshield to prevent scratching the glass. Spray on washer fluid first.

A scratched windshield will reduce visibility.

Washer Reservoir



CAUTION
Do not use antifreeze or engine coolant in the windshield washer reservoir, damage to seals and other components will result.

Weekly: check reservoir water level, located in the engine compartment under the coolant expansion tank. If necessary, fill to the proper level.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

COOLING SYSTEM

Cooling system maintenance

Your engine's cooling system is standard with Extended Life Coolant (ELC). ELC consists of a mixture of ethylene glycol, water, and organic acid technology chemical inhibitors. ELC prevents corrosion and scale formation as well as provides freezing and boiling point protection.

CAUTION

The engine cooling system has very specific maintenance and inspection requirements. Failure to follow requirements can damage the engine. Engine damage can include but is not limited to:

- Freezing
- Boiling
- Corrosion
- Pitted cylinder liners

This information is found in the engine manufacturers owner's manual. It is the owner's responsibility to follow all requirements listed in the engine manufacturers owner's manual.

What To Check In An ELC-filled Cooling System
ELC Concentration

Check the level of freeze/boilover protection, which is determined by the ELC concentration. Use a glycol refractometer to determine glycol level. Add ELC to obtain the ELC to water ratio required to provide the protection you need. Use the chart below to help determine how much ELC you need to add.

NOTE

Maximum recommended ELC concentration is 60% ELC and 40% water by volume (a 60/40 coolant mixture). The minimum recommended concentration is 40%.

In an ELC-filled cooling system, the freeze point should be maintained between -30° F and -45° F (-34° C and -43° C).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Desired ELC/Water ratio:																
10%	15%	20%	25%	30%	35%	**40%**	**45%**	**50%**	**55%**	**60%**	65%	70%	75%	80%	85%	90%
Freeze point °F (°C)																
+25 (-4)	+20 (-7)	+15 (-9)	+10 (-12)	+5 (-15)	-5 (-21)	-12 (-24)	-23 (-31)	-34 (-37)	-50 (-46)	-65 (-54)	-75 (-59)	-84 (-64)	-70 (-57)	-55 (-48)	-43 (-42)	-30 (-34)
Items in bold are the recommended levels of concentration.																

ELC Condition (Contamination and Inhibitor Concentration)

Perform a visual inspection of the ELC. It should have no cloudiness or floating debris. Determine the chemical inhibitor concentration level by using an ELC-specific test kit or test strips. Inhibitor concentration level determines corrosion protection. If you are concerned about possible coolant quality, contamination, or mechanical problems, submit a coolant sample for analysis. Improper maintenance may cause coolant degradation and could result in damage to the cooling system and engine components. Consult your dealer or the ELC manufacturer's representative for recommended ELC test kits, test strips, and laboratory sample procedures.

ELC Extender

Add ELC extender if necessary at the maintenance interval under "Cooling".

Coolant Filter

If your vehicle came with a non-chemical filter ("blank filter"), replace it only with a blank filter at the interval specified in the Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12. Never use filters that contain SCAs in an ELC-filled system.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Topping Off

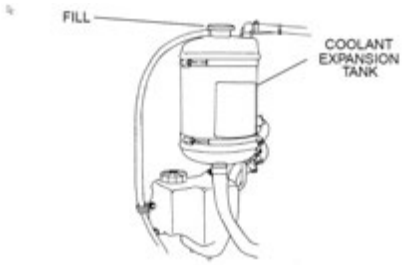
WARNING!

Removing the fill cap on a hot engine can cause scalding coolant to spray out and burn you badly. If the engine has been in operation within the previous 30 minutes, be very careful in removing the fill cap. Protect face, hands, and arms against escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag. Do not try to remove it until the surge tank cools down or if you see any steam or coolant escaping. In any situation, remove the cap very slowly and carefully. Be ready to back off if any steam or coolant begins to escape.

NOTE

If frequent topping off is necessary and there are no visible signs of coolant leaks when the engine is cold, check for leaks with the engine operating at normal temperature.

Top off the cooling system when coolant does not rise to the level indicated as ‘MIN’ on the surge tank. The surge tank is translucent which allows the coolant level to be seen.



Surge Tank

NOTE

Do not use the pressure cap to fill the surge tank with fluid.

Proper Coolant Level

NOTE

Do not overfill a cooling system. Excess coolant may result in overflow, loss of antifreeze, and reduced corrosion protection.

- The minimum fluid level is determined by the line on the surge tank indicated by the letters "MIN". This indicator is located below the fill cap.
- The cooling system will need fluid if the surge tank level does not rise to the "MIN" line regardless if the system is hot or cold.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Refilling Your Radiator

1. If your cooling system is built with drain valves in the upper engine coolant pipe, open them before filling the surge tank.
2. Close any open coolant drains in the system.
3. Remove the surge tank fill cap (do not remove the surge tank pressure cap).
4. Fill the system with premixed coolant through the surge tank fill cap. Pour coolant at a steady flow rate until the surge tank is full (to the base of the fill neck). It may be necessary to pause for 1 minute and then refill if the fluid level dropped.
5. Close any drain valves that were opened in Step 1.
6. Start the engine and idle at low RPM.
7. During low rpm idle, air will purge from the cooling system which will lower the coolant level in the surge tank. Continue to fill the surge tank until the coolant level remains approximately ½ in. above the "MIN" line. This may take up to 2 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.
8. Operate the engine throttle until the operating temperature stabilizes (when the thermostat opens).
9. Fill the surge tank as necessary to raise the coolant level to ½ in. above the "MIN" level.
10. Operate the engine at high idle for another 10 minutes and then fill the surge tank again to ½" above the "MIN" level.
11. Replace the surge tank fill cap.

Check the coolant level after each trip. Add coolant as necessary. You may find your coolant level is not up to the correct level soon after you have filled the radiator. This may be because all the trapped air in the system has not yet been purged. It takes a little time for all of the air to leave the system after you fill your radiator.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Engine (Block) Heater

WARNING!

Do not use the heater if there are any signs of problems. Engine block heaters can cause fires resulting in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage if not properly maintained and operated. Regularly inspect the engine block heater wiring and connector for damaged or frayed wires. Contact your authorized dealer or the manufacturer of the heater if you are in need of repairs or information. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Always unplug the block heater before starting your engine. Damage to the cooling system could occur if not turned OFF (unplugged).

Use a solution of half ethylene glycol antifreeze and half water for best heater performance. Do not use more than 65 percent concentration of antifreeze, as a shortened heater life will result.

After servicing the cooling system, operate the vehicle for a day or two before using the heater. Trapped air inside the engine needs time to escape.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

ELECTRICAL

Electrical System

WARNING!

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

CAUTION

Do not modify or improperly repair the vehicles electrical system or fuse panel. All electrical repairs should be performed by an authorized dealer. Improper repair or modifications will void your warranty and/or cause serious damage to your vehicle.

Low Voltage Disconnect (LVD)

Purpose

The LVD may increase battery life and prevent unnecessary jump start conditions by ensuring that an unattended load does not deplete the battery charge to a level that will prevent you from starting your vehicle.

Operation

The LVD will disconnect non-vital battery loads when battery voltage drops below 12.3V for 3 minutes and the key switch is in the ACC or OFF position. During the last 2 minutes the LVD will emit a slow audible beep. 30 seconds before disconnecting loads the alarm will change to a fast beep. The battery voltage must come back up above a certain voltage before the LVD will reset.

See an authorized dealer if the LVD fails to reconnect loads during normal operation.

Circuits Disconnected By LVD

- Cab Dome Lamps
- Cab Accessories
- Spare Battery A & B

NOTE

All LVD circuits are color-coded blue on the central electrical panel cover label.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Do not use the Spare Battery A & B circuits or other circuits that are controlled by the LVD to power electronic engine controls, ABS circuits, or safety/work-related lighting. Before adding any device to the vehicle's electrical system, consult your nearest authorized dealer or read the contents of TMC RP-136. Failure to do so may cause equipment damage or lead to personal injury.

NOTE

The determination of what circuits/loads that were connected to the LVD was based upon the recommendation from Technology and Maintenance Council (TMC) of the American Trucking Association. To review the recommended practice, see TMC RP-136.

Light Bulbs

Headlight Replacement

Replacing a headlight bulb is accomplished by accessing the rear of the headlight via a access panel in the front fender. Open the hood to get access to this panel.

Once the panel is open, the headlight bulb socket may be removed to replace the bulb.

WARNING!

Optional HID headlights have high voltage circuits and should only be serviced by a trained technician. Attempting to service the HID ballast without proper training may result in severe electrical shock which could lead to death or personal injury.

Access door

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Headlight Aiming

The headlights were properly aimed at the factory to meet safety specifications. If the headlights need to be adjusted, please have an authorized dealership aim the headlights.

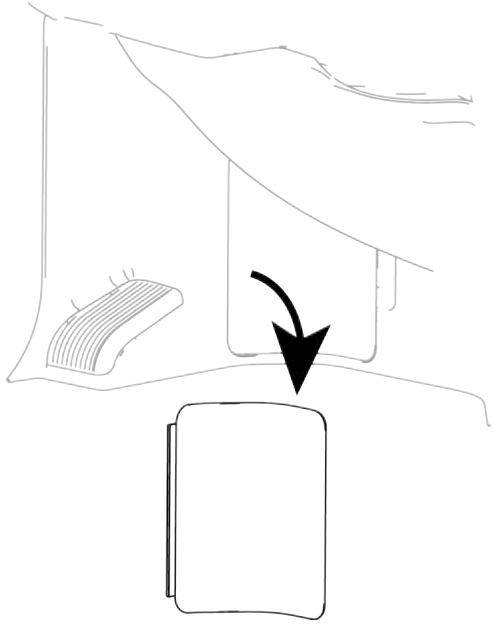
Bulb Specifications

DESCRIPTION	PART NO.
Headlights	9007 BULB
Front turn signal	3157K LL BULB
Marker	1895 BULB
Stop/tail turn	1157 BULB
Backup	1156 BULB
Hood marker	4157NAK LL BULB
Roof marker	194 BULB
Dome	1141 BULB
Warning lamp module	#37 or 73 (T1 3/4 wedge base)

Fuses, Circuit Breakers and Relays

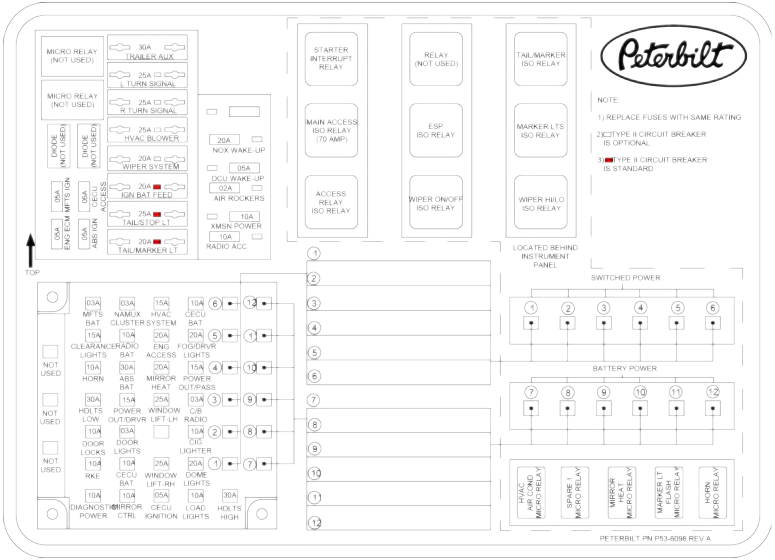
Fuses, circuit breakers, and relays are located in the Fuse Panel to the left of the steering column behind the clutch pedal. Additional fuses may be located in the engine compartment.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



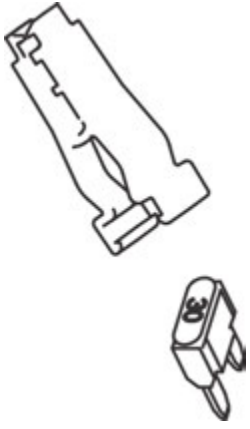
Fuse Panel Door

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Fuse Panel Label

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Fuse Puller

Fuse Inspection and Replacement

If a fuse is blown, see What to do if fuse or relay blows on page 2-6 for more information.

Adding Electrical Options

WARNING!

Do not add a fuse with a rating higher than 30 amps. Follow the circuit protection size/type recommended by the component manufacturer. Installing a fuse or circuit breaker greater than designated may damage the electrical system which could lead to equipment damage and/or personal injury.

CAUTION

Follow all manufacturers' circuit protection recommendations for the components and wires being added. Failure to comply may result in equipment damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

If you are unfamiliar with proper electrical repair practices and procedures, see your authorized dealer for assistance.

NOTE

Easy addition of circuits is provided by plug-in connectors that have a ground and a power wire.

For proper electrical system performance, refer to a wiring diagram for your chassis before adding electrical options.

WARNING!

Never install a circuit breaker in a circuit that is designated as "fuse-only" circuit(s). Fuse-only circuits are marked with an * on the reverse side of the Fuse Panel cover. Using a circuit breaker in those fuse-only circuits may cause the circuit to overheat when a short exists which could lead to equipment damage and/or personal injury.

Batteries

Battery Access

The vehicle is originally equipped with three or four batteries. Replacement batteries must meet the following specifications: maintenance-free, group 31 size, threaded stud, 12V/ 650 cold cranking ampere (CCA), and 160 minutes of reserve capacity.

The battery compartment is located on the left side of the vehicle, under the cab access steps.

1. Remove the 6 bolts that are located in the 2 cab access step plate.
2. Remove battery cover for access.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

In-Cab Battery Box

Your vehicle may be equipped with Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) batteries located in the cab under the passenger's seat. The glass mat in AGM batteries are designed to absorb the battery acid inside the battery that can leak or spill out in conventional batteries. This design feature allows batteries to be positioned in any orientation without risk of leaking.

To access the batteries:

1. Remove 6 fasteners securing the passenger side seat base to the battery box assembly.
2. Remove the seat and seat base as one unit to gain access to the batteries.

WARNING!

Replace only with AGM (Group 31) batteries. Use of other batteries could result in acid leaks causing personal injury in the event of a vehicle accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Battery cables and air/electrical harnesses are mounted to the bottom of the floor. Do not drill or screw into floor pan without first checking the location of the cables, harnesses or any other component that might be damaged. Damaging any component could result in electrical shock which could cause personal injury and/or loss of a critical truck system. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Electrical damage or battery explosion can occur when improperly charging batteries. Refer to the Charging System on page 5-95 for appropriate charging instructions. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Batteries release gases that are flammable. Batteries are equipped with vent tubes and flash arrestors which vent battery gases out of the cab. Ensure all vent tubes, flash arrestors and grommets are properly installed and ensure they are clear and functioning properly. Failure to reinstall or keep the vent tubes and grommets clear or ensure the flash arrestor(s) are functioning properly could result in personal injury or equipment damage. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Do not store other items in this battery box. Failure to comply could result in damage to the truck and/or batteries.

CAUTION

Properly secure battery tie downs and battery box cover when reinstalling batteries after service. Do not over tighten. Over tightening can crack the battery case which can lead to equipment damage.

Removing and Installing Batteries:

1. Be sure all switches on the vehicle are turned OFF.
2. Disconnect negative ground cable first.
3. Disconnect positive cable.
4. Unscrew bolt of holding plate with open end wrench.

NOTE

Always dispose of automotive batteries in a safe and responsible manner. Contact your authorized dealer for disposal standards. Call your local authorized recycling center for information on recycling automotive batteries.

Follow the procedure below to reinstall batteries on the vehicle:

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE

Make sure to reconnect the ground (negative) cable last.

1. Place batteries in vehicle and tighten bolt of holding plate.
2. Reconnect positive cable.
3. Reconnect ground (negative) ground cable.

WARNING!

Battery replacement may alter or disturb battery cable routing. Check to insure battery cables are free from any point of chaffing. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Replacing Parts Removed for Access

1. Replace battery cover.
2. Install 2 bolts in step strut. Torque to 24-32 lb-ft (33-43 Nm).
3. Install fairing and install 4 bolts. Torque to 6-7 lb-ft (8-9 Nm).
4. Install steps by installing 2 bolts in each step. Torque to 24-32 lb-ft (33-43 Nm).

WARNING!

Always reinstall the steps before entering the cab. Without the steps you could slip and fall, resulting in possible injury to yourself.

WARNING!

Fairings not installed properly could come loose and cause other motorists to have an injury accident. It is important that fairings be installed properly. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Before attempting any work on the batteries or electrical system, remove all jewelry. If metal jewelry or other metal comes in contact with electrical circuits, a short circuit may occur causing you to be injured, as well as electrical system failure and damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Battery Care

Regular attention to the charging system will help prolong the service life of the batteries. Here are some common causes of battery failure:

Overcharge: this condition results from improper voltage regulator adjustment. It results in overheating of the battery, warped plates, and evaporation of electrolyte.

Undercharge: the voltage regulator is malfunctioning, the drive belt is slipping, or your vehicle has undergone long periods of standing idle or short distance driving. These conditions result in battery plates becoming covered with a hard coating.

Vibration: loose battery hold-downs may cause battery plate failure.

Short Circuits: these discharge the battery by draining electricity.

Dirty or Loose Connections: improper connections may stop the flow of electrical power to and from the battery.

Battery Charging

Except for using small trickle charges to maintain battery condition, you should have your vehicle's batteries charged by a qualified service facility.

WARNING!

Batteries can injure you severely. They contain acid, produce poisonous and explosive gases, and supply levels of electric current high enough to cause burns. A spark or flame near a battery on charge may cause it to explode with great force. Never remove or tamper with the battery caps. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

To help reduce the risk of personal injuries, follow these guidelines carefully when recharging a battery:

- Before attempting any service in the electrical installation,

https://truckmanualshub.com/

disconnect the battery negative cable.

- Allow no sparks or open flame anywhere near the charging area.
- Charge a battery only in a well-ventilated area, such as outdoors or in a fully open garage which contains no pilot lights or other flames. Gases generated during the charging process must be allowed to escape.
- Always make sure the battery charger is OFF before connecting or disconnecting the cable clamps.
- To avoid short circuits, damage to the vehicle, or personal injury, never place metal tools or jumper cables on the battery or nearby. Metal that accidentally comes in contact with the positive battery terminal or any other metal on the vehicle (that is in contact with the positive terminal), could cause a short circuit or an explosion.

Charging Reminders

- Use protective eyewear.
- Keep all batteries away from children.
- Never reverse battery poles.
- Never attempt to place the vehicle in motion, or run the engine with batteries disconnected.
- Keep the battery clean and dry.
- Look for any signs of damage.
- Battery terminals should not be coated with improper grease. Use petroleum jelly or commercially available, noncorrosive, nonconductive terminal coatings.
- Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This can seriously damage sensitive electronic components such

https://truckmanualshub.com/

as relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger. Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent mechanic with the proper equipment.

Slow Battery Charging

> **NOTE**
>
> Follow the instructions that come with your battery charger.

- It is not necessary to remove the battery from the compartment.

> **WARNING!**
>
> Charger cables must be connected positive to positive (+ to +) and negative to negative (- to -). If connected improperly, batteries could explode. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

> **WARNING!**
>
> Always make sure the battery charger is OFF before connecting or disconnecting the cable clamps. To reduce the danger of explosions and resulting death or personal injury, do not connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.

1. Disconnect the battery cables.
2. Connect charger cables.
3. Start charging the battery at a rate not over 6 amperes. Normally, a battery should be charged at no more than 10 percent of its rated capacity.
4. After charging, turn OFF charger and disconnect charger cables.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Electrical and Alternator Precautions

Take the following precautions to avoid burning out alternator diodes:

- Do not start the engine with alternator disconnected (connections removed) from the circuit.
- Before welding, disconnect all electronic connections to the vehicle batteries.
- Remove battery power cable and insulate it from the vehicle.
- Do not run the engine with the batteries disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery cables or alternator connection cables with the engine running.
- Never turn the ignition switch from the ON position to the START position with the engine running.
- When charging the battery (installed in the vehicle) disconnect the battery cables.
- Do not reverse the cables of the alternator, starter motor, or battery.
- Do not polarize the alternator. The alternator should not be polarized like a generator. To ensure correct polarity, use a test lamp or a voltmeter.

Remote Keyless Entry

The remote keyless entry system may become inoperational due to a key fob battery. If you have issues with a key fob, replace the battery and re-synchronize the key fob. In some situations, the key fob may need to be replaced and in others, a fuse may have failed and may render both key fobs inoperative.

Contact your dealer for more help if a key fob does not work and it is not because of a bad battery.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

ENGINE

Engine Maintenance

WARNING!

Exhaust fumes from the engine contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odor less gas. Do not breathe the engine exhaust gas. A poorly maintained, damaged or corroded exhaust system can allow carbon monoxide to enter the cab. Entry of carbon monoxide into the cab is also possible from other vehicles nearby. Failure to properly maintain your vehicle could cause carbon monoxide to enter the cab and cause death or personal injury.

WARNING!

Never idle your vehicle for prolonged periods of time if you sense that exhaust fumes are entering the cab. Investigate the cause of the fumes and correct it as soon as possible. If the vehicle must be driven under these conditions, drive only with the windows open. Failure to repair the source of the exhaust fumes may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

NOTE

Keep the engine exhaust system and the vehicles cab ventilation system properly maintained. It is recommended that the vehicles exhaust system and cab be inspected:

- By a competent technician every 15,000 miles
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system
- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or cab is damaged

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Engine Lubrication

Refer to the engine manufacturer's Engine Operation and Maintenance Manual supplied with your vehicle for information about draining and refilling engine oil, engine crank case capacity, engine oil type, and changing oil filters, etc.

WARNING!

Hot engine oil can be dangerous. You could be burned. Let the engine oil cool down before changing it. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Inspection of the Engine Oil Level

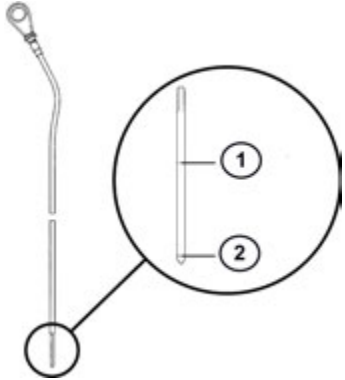
NOTE

It takes approximately 15 minutes for all the oil to run into the sump when the engine is 'warm.' If the level is checked immediately after switching off the engine, the dipstick will show a low oil level.

1. Make sure that the vehicle frame rail is standing on a flat and level surface.
2. Make sure that the vehicle is horizontal, both lengthwise and crosswise. Check this carefully on a vehicle with air suspension. Note that the engine may be inclined up to 4° depending on the vehicle model and wheelbase.
3. Twist the dipstick handle to unlock it, then pull the dipstick out of the holder.
4. Wipe the dipstick clean with a lint-free cloth.
5. Place the dipstick back into the holder.
6. Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level. The oil level should always be between the 2 marks on the dipstick.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

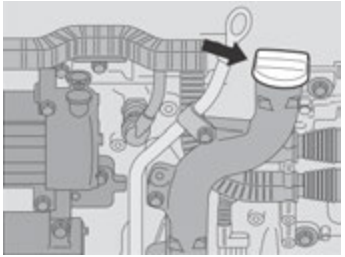
7. Reinstall the dipstick and twist to lock it in place.



1. Engine Oil High Level
2. Engine Oil Low Level

Topping Up the Engine Oil

1. Top up with oil, if necessary, via the filler opening. Use the correct grade in the correct quantity. For oil replacement, please see engine Operator's Manual included with this chassis.
2. After topping up, wait 1 minute and check the oil level again.
3. Reinstall the oil fill cap and twist to lock it in place.



Pipe and Hose Clamps

Use the following table for torque specifications to check pipe and hose clamps.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Pipe and Hose Clamp Torque Values

APPLICATION	APPROVED CLAMP	TORQUE	
		Nm	Lb-In
Radiator & Heat Exchanger Hoses	Constant-Torque CT-L	10.2-12.5	90-110
Heater Hoses	Constant Tension	not required	not required
Air Intake Pipes	Hi-Torque HTM-L	11.3-14.2	100-125
Charge Air Intake Hoses	Flex Seal 667	7.9-11.3	70-100
	B9296	6-7	50-60
Fuel, Oil & Water Heat Exchangers (for hoses less than 9/16 diameter)	Miniature 3600L	1.1-1.7	10-15
Exhaust Clamps	Breeze V-Band	54	480

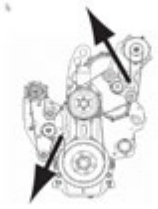
Accessory Drive Belts

You can extend the reliability and service life of your vehicle's drive belts with proper attention to installation, and maintenance. Neglect could cause belt failure. The result could be the loss of the electrical or air system as well as possible engine damage from overheating. So it's a very good idea to check your belts frequently and replace them as soon as you detect trouble.

Follow this procedure to install an accessory drive belt:

1. Route the new belt around the pulleys, and then rotate the automatic tensioner so that the idler pulley swings toward the belt routing. The following figure shows an example of the rotation direction to release the tensioner.
2. Slip the belt around the idler pulley attached to the automatic tensioner.
3. Release the automatic tensioner.
4. Check the belt alignment on each pulley. The belt must fall between the flanges of each pulley.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



NOTE
See the engine manufacturer's operator's manual for further information on replacing engine drive belts.

Engine Fan

WARNING!
Do not work on the fan with the engine running. The engine fan can engage at any time without warning. Before turning on the ignition, be sure that no one is near the fan. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

Your truck may be equipped with an On/Off or Viscous Fan Drive. Follow these guidelines to check your engine fan:

Check the fan bearings for fan hub bearing looseness, loss of lubricant and any abnormal conditions. (For example, fan belt misaligned or excessive wear/damage.) Before starting the engine and with the engine off, look and feel for looseness in the fan hub.

With the engine idling and the hood open, stand at the front of the vehicle. Listen for any noises coming from the fan hub. Bearings that have lost lubricant, and are dry, will typically emit a squeal or a growl when the engine is at operating temperature and the fan clutch is engaged. If noise is detected, have the fan bearings inspected by an authorized dealership.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fan Drive and Blade

WARNING!

Do not work on the fan with the engine running. The engine fan can engage at any time without warning. Before turning on the ignition be sure that no one is near the fan. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

Fan Blade Clearance: Around the fan shroud, the recommended distance is 1 in. (25 mm) from front edge of any fan blade-to-radiator side member. Minimum clearance is 3/4 in. (19 mm).

- Rear edge of any blade must be no closer than 3/8 in. (9 mm) to the nearest engine component. If this cannot be obtained, the fan spacer or fan is not correct.
- The leading edge of any fan blade must be 1 in. (25 mm) from the inside edge of the shroud.

Air Intake System

Engine heat, vibration, and age combine to loosen air intake connections and cause cracks in the tubing and elbows. Leaks in the intake system allow abrasive dust to enter the engine and quickly cause expensive damage. During your daily walk-around inspection, carefully check all tubing, elbows, clamps, supports and fasteners for condition and tightness.

- Check the Charge-Air-Cooler for air leaks annually. The air leaks can be caused by cracked tubes or header. For service see your authorized dealer.

CAUTION

Do not use air intake pipes and connections as a step or to pull yourself up. This could loosen the connections and open the system to unfiltered air which could damage the engine.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Turbocharger

When servicing the air intake and exhaust systems on a turbocharged engine, check the items listed below.

WARNING!

Do not operate engine with turbocharger intake piping disconnected. A suction is created when the engine is running. This suction could draw your hand or anything else near it into the impeller fan. You could be injured. Always keep the intake piping connected when you will be running the engine.

Lubricating System: Check the oil lines, housing, and connections. Look for leaks, damage, or deterioration. Leaks could mean you have damaged oil lines or oil seals.

Manifold: With the engine operating, check for leaking manifold or flange gaskets.

High Frequency Vibration: Vibration may indicate turbo rotor imbalance. Have your dealer investigate this immediately. If you detect any deficiencies, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer for servicing. Delay could lead to severe and expensive damage to your vehicle.

Air Cleaners

The following service information is basic to all air cleaner makes and models.

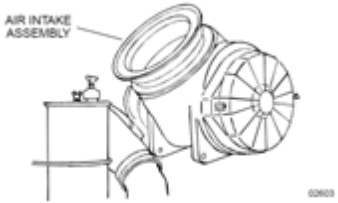
CAUTION

Failure to replace air filter at proper intervals may result in passage of dirt/debris into the engine or the "dusting" of an engine resulting in significant engine damage.

Service the filter elements when the Air Cleaner Restriction gauge (option) locks in the extreme High position. Have the element serviced at a Peterbilt Dealer or Authorized Service Center. Paper elements require care and proper handling, because they are critical to engine service life. Service the air cleaner periodically. If the vehicle operates in areas with heavy dust, maintenance should be more

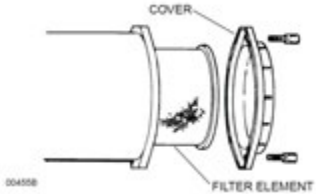
https://truckmanualshub.com/

frequent. Follow the instructions below to remove the air filter.



Air Intake Assembly

Air Filter Replacement



To remove the air filter:

1. Remove the two thumb screws.
2. Remove air cleaner service cover.
3. Remove the filter element.
4. Clean out the inside of the air cleaner body and outlet tube with a dry rag.

To install air cleaner element:

1. Slide air cleaner element into housing.
2. Install air cleaner end cap.
3. Install thumbscrews around air cleaner housing end cap.

NOTE
The air cleaner is internally sealed by a radial seal around Inlet tube of air cleaner element. For further information on servicing the air cleaner, see the Medium Duty Maintenance Manual.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

ServiSignal™ Mini Indicator

The ServiSignal™ Mini Indicator is installed on the air cleaner or air induction piping so it has access to clean filtered air. As the filter plugs and restriction increases, a red flag appears in the window. When it reaches the red zone, the air filter should be replaced. The indicator can be reset by pressing the button at the end of the indicator.

Exhaust System

The exhaust system is part of the noise and emission control system. Periodically check the exhaust for wear, exhaust leaks, and loose or missing parts. For details see Noise and Emission Control on page 5-122.

Please refer to the Engine Operator's Manual for more details on how to maintain the emission's components in the exhaust system.

Engine Mounting

Periodic Inspection: Inspect engine mounts every 60,000 miles (96,560 km). Check for the following:

- Inspect both mount and leg fasteners. Check for loose or broken bolts. Replace as necessary.
- Check mount and leg for fractures, breaks or deformation. Replace as necessary.
- Check for complete insertion of motor mount. Replace as necessary.
- New leg to mount flange head bolts should be torqued to 210-230 Lb-Ft (284-311 Nm).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

CAUTION
Do not re-torque or reuse existing flange head bolts. These bolts are factory set to the specified torque. If bolts are loose or damaged, they must be replaced with the new bolts. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

FUEL SYSTEM

Location of Fuel Shut-off Valves

Fuel shut-off valves for the fuel crossover line are on the bottom of the secondary fuel tank, at the crossover line connection. They are optional on the primary fuel tank.

Specification

Use only diesel fuel as recommended by engine manufacturers.

WARNING!

A mixture of gasoline or alcohol with diesel fuel in the presence of an ignition source (such as a cigarette) could cause an explosion resulting in death or personal injury. Use only the recommended diesel fuel.

CAUTION

If anyone ever pours gasoline into your fuel tank, drain the entire system. Otherwise, the pump and engine will be damaged. Don't try to dilute the gasoline by adding diesel fuel (See Warning above).

Fuel Filters

See Engine Manufacturer's Operator Manual provided with this chassis or the instructions provided with a Fleetguard filter.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

FRAME

Introduction

WARNING!

Do not cut, splice or weld frame rails or drill through the top or bottom flanges of the rails. These operations could affect frame rail strength leading to a failure resulting in an accident. Rail failures resulting from such modifications are not warrantable. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Emergency Welding

WARNING!

Frame welding is NOT recommended. The high heat of welding nullifies the special heat treatment of the rails, greatly reducing the tensile strength of the frame rail. If a frame member becomes cracked from overloading, fatigue, surface damage or a collision, the only permanent repair is to replace the damaged frame member with a new part.

In an emergency, a temporary repair may be performed. Observe the following precautions to protect electronic systems during welding operations. Emergency welding procedures are further explained in the maintenance manuals. Please refer to the ordering information on the back cover to obtain a maintenance manual.

Welding Precautions

In the event of emergency welding of a frame rail and when welding any other part of your truck or any component attached to your truck, observe the following precautions before welding:

- Disconnect all electronic devices. It is not possible to list all of the electronics that could be affected, but a few examples include the following: alternator, engine Electronic Control Unit (ECU), transmission ECU, ABS ECU, navigation devices, diagnostic devices, and monitoring devices.
- Disconnect battery cables and insulate them from the vehicle.
- Do not use the ECU or engine ground stud for the ground of the welding probe.
- Ensure that the ground connection for the welder is as close to the

https://truckmanualshub.com/

weld point as possible. This ensures maximum weld current and minimum risk to damage of electrical components on the vehicle.

Painting

Do not electrostatically paint your truck or any component on your truck without first removing all of the electronic components from the truck. It is not possible to list all of the electronics that could be affected, but a few examples include the alternator, engine Electronic Control Unit (ECU), transmission ECU, ABS ECU, navigation devices, diagnostic devices, and monitoring devices.

Fifth Wheel Maintenance

Proper preventive maintenance is essential to trouble-free service and safe operation of the fifth wheel.

Every 15,000 miles or monthly:

- Refer to specific manufacturer's literature for any special instructions.
- Steam clean the fifth wheel.
- Check lock guard operation using a commercial lock tester.
- Clean and oil all moving parts.
- Lubricate the lock mechanism with a lithium-base grease.
- All grease fittings (especially those which grease the top surface of the fifth wheel).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Every 60,000 miles or 6 months:

- Refer to specific manufacturer's literature for any special instructions.
- Remove fifth wheel from vehicle. Refer to the Shop Manual, "Fifth Wheel Removal."
- Steam clean the fifth wheel and mounting brackets.
- Check all moving parts for excessive wear or damage. Replace all worn or broken parts.
- Complete two-month service procedure.
- Install fifth wheel. Refer to the Shop Manual, "Fifth Wheel Installation."

Frame Fastener Torque Requirements

Tighten all frame fasteners with a torque wrench. Torque specifications apply to the following fasteners with lightly lubricated threads.

NOTE
Whenever possible, torque all frame fasteners on the nut end, not the bolt head.

Standard Grade 8 UNF or UNC and Metric

FAS-TENER SIZE	TORQUE *	
	Nm	Lb-Ft
5/16	22-30	16-22
3/8	41-54	30-40
7/16	75-88	55-65
1/2	109-122	80-90
9/16	156-190	115-140
5/8	224-265	165-195
3/4	394-462	290-340
7/8	517-626	380-460
1	952-1,129	700-830
1-1/8	1,346-1,591	990-1,170
1-1/4	1,877-2,217	1,380-1,630
METRIC WITH NYLON INSERT NUTS		
M5	8-12	6-9
M6	9-15	7-11
M8	23-31	17-23
M10	33-43	24-32

https://truckmanualshub.com/

FAS-TENER SIZE	TORQUE *	
	Nm	Lb-Ft
M12	75-101	55-75
M16	163-217	120-160
M20	352-460	260-340
* ESNA Style Lock Nut, with nylon insert. Lubricate nylon insert nut lightly with SAE 20/30 oil.		

Sliding Fifth Wheels

Lubricate bearing surface of support bracket through the grease fittings on the side of the fifth wheel plate. Use a water resistant lithium-base grease.

NOTE
The plate must be lifted up slightly to relieve the weight of the bracket while applying grease.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

FRONT AXLE AND SUSPENSION

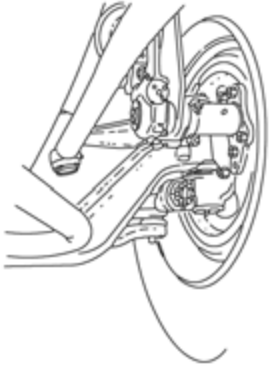
Axle Lubrication

Change bearing lubrication when seals are replaced, or brakes are relined. See Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12.

Thoroughly clean hubs and bearings with solvent and a stiff bristle brush, then dry and inspect components for wear or damage. Re-lubricate with approved axle lubricant.

Kingpin Lubrication

Lubricate with approved lubricant. Lubricate knuckle thrust bearings, knuckle pins, and tie rod ends. See Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12. Lack of lubrication causes premature wear and hard steering. Lubrication schedule may be shortened if necessary.



Suspension Lubrication

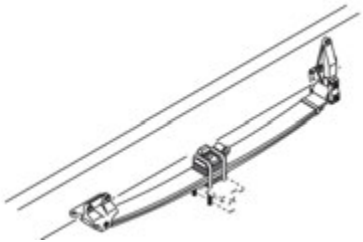
Each standard spring anchor pin has a grease fitting. Pressure lubricate spring pins as specified. See Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12.

At regular intervals, the spring leaves may be lubricated with a rust-inhibiting oil applied with a spray gun or brush.

Depending on your suspension, lubricate all spring pins until grease flows out of both ends of the bushing. Look for signs of rust or water in the flushed grease. If a pin will not accept grease, it should be removed, cleaned, and inspected.

CAUTION
Do not spray the suspension with chemical products or mineral oil; it can cause damage to the bushings.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Inspection

For all vehicles, mandatory maintenance procedures include retightening all U-bolts and inspecting the suspension for loose fasteners, abnormal wear, or damage. However, even with proper maintenance, the service life of leaf springs is affected by many factors, such as: fatigue, vehicle gross weight, type of load, road conditions, and vehicle speed.

Check for cracks, wear marks, splits, or other defects on the surface of the spring. Defective parts must be replaced. Because repaired springs cannot be fully restored to their original service life, replace the complete assembly if cracks or other defects are detected.

Visually inspect shock absorbers and rubber bushings.

Wheel Alignment

For driving safety and comfort, and to prolong the life of your vehicle, it is important to have wheels correctly aligned. Check tire wear frequently. Uneven tire wear is a sign that the wheels may be misaligned.

If you see uneven wear, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer familiar with aligning wheels on your vehicle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

U-Bolt Torque

It is important that U-bolts remain tight. Severe use of your vehicle will cause them to loosen faster. But all vehicles need to have their U-bolts checked and tightened regularly. Be sure someone with the proper training and the right tools checks and tightens the U-bolts on your vehicle.

New springs can settle in after service, relieving the tension on the U-bolts. Loose U-bolts can cause leaf spring breakage, axle misalignment, hard steering and abnormal tire wear.

All vehicles should have suspension U-bolts tightened after the first 500 miles (800 km) of operation. Re-torque the front spring pinch bolts and shackle pinch bolts.

WARNING!

Do not operate the vehicle if the U-bolts are not properly tightened. Loose U-bolts will cause the axle to not be properly secured to the suspension, which could cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Loose U-bolts can also cause uneven tire wear and poor alignment. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

U-bolts are difficult to tighten unless you have the right equipment. If you cannot tighten them correctly yourself, be sure to have them checked and tightened regularly by an authorized mechanic.

Tighten U-bolt nuts to the specified torque value with the vehicle loaded to its normal gross weight. The following torque values apply to U-bolts and nuts with clean threads lubricated with Chevron zinc lubricant (SAE 20 or 30 oils acceptable but not preferred).

WARNING!

Do not replace U-bolts and nuts with common U-bolts or standard nuts. These parts are critical to vehicle safety. If the wrong U-bolts or nuts are used, the axle could loosen or separate from the vehicle and cause a serious accident. Use only U-bolts and nuts of SAE Grade 8 specification or better. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Front Spring Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8

U-BOLT SIZE DIAMETER (Inch Dimensions)	TORQUE	
	Nm	Lb-Ft
3/4	333-408	245-300
7/8	598-734	440-540
1	925-1,060	680-780
1-1/8	1,470-1,660	1,080-1,220
1-1/4	1,890-2,120	1,390-1,560
1-1/2	3,130-3,860	2,300-2,840

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER

Introduction

The combination heater-air conditioner provides comfort for those in the cab through accurate control of the cab environment in all weather conditions. Regular attention to the items below will help you keep the heater-air conditioner unit running well.

Keep the vehicle's ventilation system, engine exhaust system and cab joints properly maintained. It is recommended that the vehicle's exhaust system and cab be serviced as follows:

- Inspected by a competent technician every 15,000 miles
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system
- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or cab is damaged

To allow for proper operation of the vehicle ventilation system, proceed as follows:

- Keep the inlet grille at the base of the windshield clear of snow, ice, leaves and other obstructions at all times.
- Keep the exhaust pipe area clear to help reduce the buildup of exhaust gas under the vehicle.
- Check the drain tube of the fresh air inlet for trapped water before assuming that there is a leak in the heating system.

Special Precautions

WARNING!

Excessive heat may cause the pressurized components of the air conditioning system to explode. Never weld, solder, steam clean, or use a blow torch near any part of the air conditioning system. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Air conditioning refrigerant can be hazardous to your health. Do not expose yourself to leaking refrigerant for prolonged periods near excessive heat, open flames, or without proper ventilation. Failure to do so may result in death or personal injury.

If a refrigerant leak develops in the presence of excessive heat or an open flame, hazardous gases may be generated. If you become aware of a refrigerant leak on your vehicle have your system serviced immediately and observe the following precautions:

Stay away from the hot engine until the exhaust manifold has cooled.

Do not permit any open flame in the area. Even a match or a cigarette lighter may generate a hazardous quantity of poisonous gas.

Do not smoke in the area. Inhaling gaseous refrigerant through a cigarette may cause violent illness.

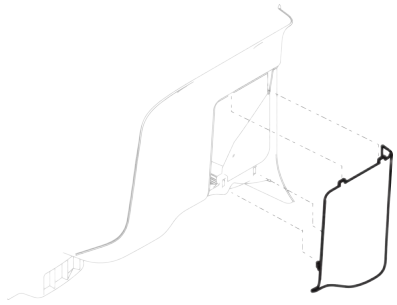
https://truckmanualshub.com/

Air Filters

Cabin Fresh Air Filter

The cab air conditioning filter is located inside the cab behind the passenger side kick panel (located below the glovebox). After removing the required panels, the filter can be pulled from the blower unit without using any tools.

To remove the HVAC access panel: pull panel out from the bottom to release the clips, then pivot the panel outward so the tabs at the top allow the panel to drop down.



HVAC Access Panel

Inspect and clean cab air filter element every 3 - 6 months of service. Depending on the operating environment, if air flow from the air conditioner and heater is less efficient or windows fog easier, you may need to replace the cab air filter.

Heater

- Check all heater controls for full-range operation.
- Check hoses, connections, and heater core for condition and leaks.

CAUTION

During extreme cold weather, do not blow hot defroster air onto cold windshields. This could crack the glass. Turn the air direction lever to Defrost and adjust the fan speed accordingly while the engine warms. If the engine is already warm, move the temperature selector to Cool, then gradually increase the temperature when you see that the windshield is starting to warm-up.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Air Conditioner

WARNING!

The air conditioning system is under pressure. If not handled properly during servicing, it could explode. Any servicing that requires depressurizing and recharging the air conditioning system must be conducted by a qualified technician with the right facilities to do the job. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

- Listen to the compressor and drive clutch for noise and vibration. If you find problems, have the system checked thoroughly. A malfunctioning clutch usually indicates trouble elsewhere in the system.
- Check the evaporator core, filter, and condenser core for debris restricting air flow. Clean if necessary. Small particles may be removed with compressed air blown through the core in the opposite direction of normal air flow.

WARNING!

Wear eye protection any time you blow compressed air. Small particles blown by compressed air could injure your eyes.

- Check the engine belt for condition and proper tension.
- Check all hoses for kinks, deterioration, chafing, and leaks. Adjust kinked or chafing hoses to eliminate restrictions and prevent further wear.
- Check all components and connections for refrigerant leaks. If you discover a leak, do not try to tighten a connection. Tightening a connection may cause a leak to worsen. Have a qualified technician correct the problem.

NOTE

A leaking evaporator or condenser core cannot be repaired; it must be replaced.

Have the air conditioning system fully serviced annually by your authorized dealer. Qualified service technicians will have to evacuate and recharge the system.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOISE AND EMISSION CONTROL

Noise Emission Warranty

There are specific components on the vehicle that are designed to meet certain EPA emissions and noise regulations. To maintain conformance with the regulations, these components need to be functional and properly maintained.

Tampering with Noise Control System

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof:

(1) The removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance, repair, or replacement, of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use, or (2) the use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts presumed to constitute tampering are the acts listed below:

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Air Intake System

- Removing or rendering inoperative the air cleaner/silencers or intake piping.

Engine Cooling System

- Removing or rendering inoperative the fan clutch.
- Removing the fan shroud.

Engine

- Removing or rendering engine speed governor inoperative so as to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer's specifications.
- Modifying ECU parameters.

Exhaust System

- Removing or rendering inoperative exhaust system components.

Fuel System

- Removing or rendering engine speed governor inoperative, allowing engine speed to exceed manufacturer's specifications.
- Removing of air signal attenuator on engines equipped with this device.
- Removing of diesel exhaust fluid tank and system.

Inner Fender Shields and Cab Skirts

- Removing shield or skirts.
- Cutting away parts of shields, skirts or damaged or loose portions of shields or skirts.

Noise Insulating Blankets

- Removing noise insulators from engine block or from around the oil pan.
- Cutting holes in, or cutting away part of noise insulators.
- Removing hood-mounted noise insulation.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

Inspection and Maintenance Instructions

The following instructions are based on inspection of the noise control system at regular intervals as indicated in the Noise Control System Maintenance Log on page 5-130.

If, during periodic inspection and maintenance of other systems and components, it is found that parts of the noise control system require attention, we recommend that those parts be inspected at more frequent intervals to assure adequate maintenance and performance.

Air Intake System

- Do all checks and maintenance procedures listed in this manual under Engine Air Intake System and Air Cleaner. See Air Dryer on page 5-57.
- Check the induction tubing, elbow connections, clamps, brackets, and fasteners for deterioration, cracks, and security.
- If you find an air leak anywhere between the air cleaner and the engine, repair that leak immediately.

CAUTION
Air leaks cause excessive noise and may result in serious damage to the engine. If you do not repair them the engine damage will not be covered by your warranty. Repair all air leaks as soon as you find them.

Engine Mounted Noise Insulators

- Check condition. Is the insulator secure? How you do this will depend on the method of attaching the noise insulators on the engine and around the oil pan (bolts, snap fasteners, or straps). Tighten loose fasteners and repair or replace any worn or damaged fasteners.
- Check insulators around fasteners and stress points, especially where they may be affected by engine vibration. Repair any cracked or damaged mounting points. Use suitable reinforcing plates to ensure that the insulators will remain in position.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Exhaust System

- Check for exhaust leaks, which would indicate a leaking manifold gasket; replace gasket if necessary.
- Check cap screws for tightness, including those at the flanges. Refer to the engine manufacturer's service manual for proper tightening sequence and torque values.

Joints and Clamps

- Check for leaks, and tighten as necessary. Check for deterioration or dents in pipes and clamps which could allow exhaust to escape.
- Replace any serviceable joints, flexible pipes and gaskets at the service intervals.

Selective Catalyst Reduction (SCR)

- Check SCR canister filter, clamps and mounting brackets. Tighten if necessary. Inspect SCR canister for signs of rust or corrosion.

 https://truckmanualshub.com/

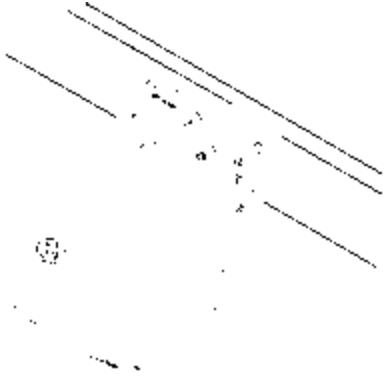
Piping

- Check exhaust piping for rust, corrosion, or damage. Replace deteriorated piping before holes appear. If piping is perforated at any point, temporary patching or lagging is acceptable until you can have permanent repairs made. On turbocharged engines, check joints at flanges and mounting brackets for tightness.

Diesel Particulate Filters (DPF)

- Check diesel particulate filter (DPF), clamps, and mounting brackets. Tighten if necessary. Inspect diesel particulate filter (DPF) for signs of rust or corrosion.
- Check internal baffling. You can do this by listening for rattling sounds while tapping on the diesel particulate filter (DPF) with a rubber mallet or revving the engine up and down through its normal operating range.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank



Vehicles that comply with 2010 EPA emission requirements will have a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank mounted to the vehicle frame.

DEF filter

The DEF system has a supply pump filter and this filter should be serviced according to the preventive maintenance schedule. Follow these

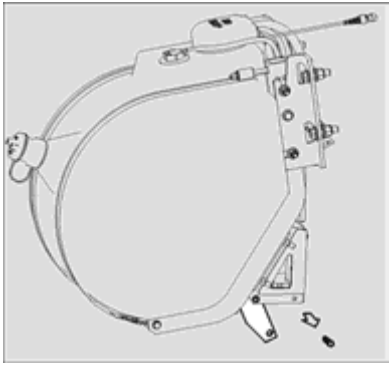
steps to replace the DEF supply pump filter:

1. Turn off the vehicle and allow the vehicle to cool down. Take special precaution with hot exhaust piping.

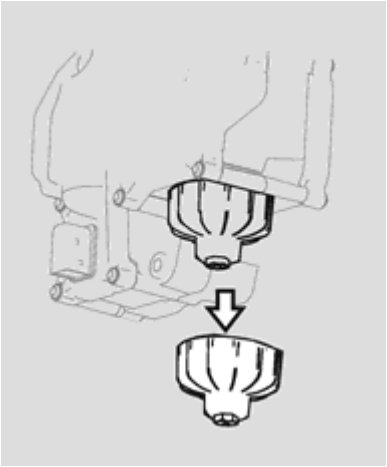
WARNING!

The exhaust piping can become extremely hot during engine operation and can cause personal injury including serious burns to the skin. Allow adequate cooling time before working near any part of the exhaust system.

2. Remove the pump protective plate mounted on the bottom of the DEF tank.



3. Using a 27 mm socket wrench (DIN3124), remove the filter cap that is screwed to the DEF Supply pump.



 https://truckmanualshub.com/

Exhaust Tail Pipe

- Check the mounting. Tighten as necessary. The miter cut at the tip of the pipe must be facing the rear of the vehicle. Do not modify the end of the pipe in any way.

Engine Fan and Shroud

WARNING!

Do not work on the fan with the engine running. The engine fan can engage at any time without warning. Anyone near the fan when it turns on could be injured. Before turning on the ignition, be sure that no one is near the fan.

- Check all fasteners for tightness. Check for stress cracks in the shroud. Make sure the shroud is adjusted so that it does not touch the fan blades.
- Check to verify that the fan is disengaged (not turning) with the engine running at normal operating temperatures (from cold to the point that the fan engages).
- Check fan blade mounting bolts. Inspect fan blades to be sure they are not cracked or bent.

Hood Insulation Blanket

- Check all fasteners for condition and security. Repair or replace any broken or defective fasteners.
- Check for chafing or tears. Patch it if necessary. Find the cause of the damage. If any component or accessory is causing wear or damage and cannot be relocated, put reinforcing pads on the blanket at the site of wear.

Inner Fender Shields and Cab Skirts

- Check all fasteners that hold the fender shields in place.
- Check fender shields for tire marks, worn spots, or damage from objects thrown from tire treads.
- Check cab skirts, sills, and brackets for overall condition and repair them as necessary. Damaged rubber fender shields or cab skirting cannot be repaired. You will need to replace it.

Noise Control System - Maintenance Log

To ensure your vehicles noise control requirements are maintained, record maintenance checks. Use the following log sheet and retain copies of documents regarding maintenance services performed and parts replaced on the vehicle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Noise Control System - Maintenance Log

Component	Recom-mended Interval (Miles)	Date & R.O. No.	Repair Facility & Location	WorkPerfor-med	Date & R.O. No.	Repair Facility & Location	WorkPerfor-med
Exhaust System Routing Integrity	25,000						
Shutters Shrouds	25,000						
Hood Insulation Blanket	10,000						
Engine Mounted Hose Insulators Fasteners	10,000						
Inner Fender Shields	50,000						
Cab Skirts Fasteners	50,000						
Air Intake System Integrity Element	5,000						

Component	Recom-mended Interval (Miles)	Date & R.O. No.	Repair Facility & Location	WorkPerfor-med	Date & R.O. No.	Repair Facility & Location	WorkPerfor-med
Clutch Type Fan Drive	10,000						

https://truckmanualshub.com/

REAR AXLE AND SUSPENSION

General Maintenance

WARNING!

Do not work on the vehicle without the parking brake set and wheels blocked securely. If the vehicle is not secured to prevent uncontrolled vehicle movement, it could roll and may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Your vehicle's suspension, by design, requires a minimal amount of maintenance. However, suspensions in over-the-road operations require periodic inspection to ensure trouble-free performance.

WARNING!

Do not operate the vehicle if the U-bolts are not properly tightened. Loose U-bolts will cause the axle to not be properly secured to the suspension, which could cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Loose U-bolts can also cause uneven tire wear and poor alignment. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING!

Failure to maintain the specified torque values or to replace worn parts can cause component system failure, possibly resulting in an accident. Improperly tightened (loose) suspension U-bolts can lead to unsafe vehicle conditions, including: hard steering, axle misalignment, spring breakage or abnormal tire wear. See Front Spring Suspension U-bolts on page 5-117 for proper torque specifications. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Do not spray the suspension with chemical products or mineral oil; it can cause damage to the bushings.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

NOTE
Failure to follow these recommendations could void warranty.

Visual Inspection

For all vehicles, mandatory maintenance procedures include retightening of U-bolts and complete inspection. However, even with proper maintenance, many factors affect the service life of springs and suspension components, such as: fatigue, vehicle gross weight, type of load, road conditions and vehicle speed.

It is important that U-bolts remain tight. Severe use of your vehicle can cause them to loosen faster. But all vehicles need to have their U-bolts checked and tightened regularly. Be sure someone with the proper training and the right tools checks and tightens the U-bolts on your vehicle.

- After the first 500 miles (800 km) of operation, inspect the suspension periodically, as noted below:
- Visually check for loose or missing fasteners, cracks in hanger or axle connection brackets.
- Check that springs are centered in hangers and in good condition.
- Check for cracks, wear marks, splits, or other defects on the surface of the spring.
- Replace defective parts. Because repaired springs cannot be fully restored to their original service life, replace the complete assembly if cracks or other defects are detected.
- After replacement of any part or discovery of loose components, check the torque of all fasteners.
- New springs settle-in after the vehicle's initial service, causing the U-bolts to become loose.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Rear Suspension Fasteners

To maintain the performance of the air suspension, check fastener torque values after the first 2,000 miles (3,218 km) of service and every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) thereafter.

Torque recommendations apply to fasteners supplied and installed by vehicle manufacture. The values listed in the tables below, are for cadmium plated or phosphate and oil fasteners only.

U-bolts are difficult to tighten unless you have the right equipment. If you cannot tighten them correctly yourself, be sure to have them checked and tightened regularly by an authorized mechanic.

U-Bolt Torque

NOTE

To ensure an accurate torque reading, use properly maintained and calibrated torque wrenches. Clean the nut and bolt. No dirt, grit, or rust should be present.

WARNING!

Do not operate the vehicle if the U-bolts are not properly tightened. Loose U-bolts will cause the axle to not be properly secured to the suspension, which could cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Loose U-bolts can also cause uneven tire wear and poor alignment. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

NOTE

Whenever possible, torque all fasteners on the nut end, not the bolt head.

Rear Suspension Fasteners (Metric & Standard)

SIZE/ TYPE	TORQUE *	
	Nm	Lb-Ft
M16 nylon-insert nuts	163-217	120-160
M20 nylon-insert nuts	352-460	260-340
M20 all-metal lock nuts	427-475	315-350
1/2 in. nut	109-122	80-90
3/4 in. nut	394-462	290-340
1-1/4 in. nut	1,877-2,217	1,380-1,630

* Torque requirements apply to manufacturer proprietary suspensions. All other suspensions must refer and adhere to original manufacturers shop manual.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Rear Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 (lubricated*)

U-BOLT SIZE DIAMETER THREAD	TORQUE**	
	Nm	Lb-Ft
3/4	333-408	245-300
7/8	598-734	440-540
1	925-1,060	680-780
1-1/8	1,470-1,660	1,080-1,220
1-1/4	1,890-2,120	1,390-1,560
1-1/2	3,130-3,860	2,300-2,840

*Chevron Zinc Lubricant or SAE 20/30 oil should be used on U-Bolt threads
**Torque requirements apply to manufacturer proprietary suspensions. All other suspensions must refer and adhere to original manufacturers shop manual.

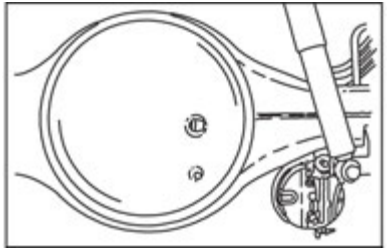
- Load the vehicle to its normal gross weight before tightening U-bolts. Loading the vehicle ensures proper adjustment of the U-bolt and spring assembly.

WARNING!

Do not replace U-bolts and nuts with common U-bolts or standard nuts. These parts are critical to vehicle safety. If the wrong U-bolts or nuts are used, the axle could loosen or separate from the vehicle and cause a serious accident. Use only U-bolts and nuts of SAE Grade 8 specification or better. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Rear Axle Lubrication

Check oil level with the vehicle parked on level ground and the fluid warm. The level should be even with the bottom of the filler hole.



CAUTION

Do not mix lubricants of different grades; although, mixing different brands of the same grade lubricant (meeting MIL L2105C), is acceptable. Lubricants of different grades are not compatible and could damage the axle.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

> **NOTE**
>
> In all cases, lubricant supplier assumes full responsibility for the performance of their product, and for product and patent liability.

For recommended types and brands of lubricants, contact your dealer.

Dana Spicer and Fabco

No initial drain is required on Dana Spicer axles that are factory filled with an Dana Spicer-approved synthetic lubricant.

- Petroleum-based lubricants must be drained within the first 5,000 miles (8,000 km) if converting to an approved synthetic lubricant.

Initial Change: See Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12 for standard rear axle service intervals. Change mineral-based lubricant in other Dana Spicer and Fabco axle assemblies (new or rebuilt) within the first 3,000 to 5,000 miles (4,800 to 8,000 km).

- For petroleum-based axles, use lubricants meeting MIL L2105C/D grade specifications or approved synthetic lubrication. Do not use oil additives.

All Vehicles with Dana Spicer and Fabco Axles: See Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12. Contact your dealer for approved synthetic lubricant brands.

- Dana Spicer Axles with synthetic lubrication and Out Runner Seals: drain, flush, and refill at 500,000 miles (804,000 km).

Axle Housing Breather Vent:

- Check and clean the axle housing breather vent at each oil level check.

Meritor:

- See Meritor Lubrication Maintenance Manual (MM1).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Rear Axle Alignment

Continual road shock and load stresses may force the rear axles out of alignment. If you detect rapid tire wear on the rear axles, you may have misaligned axles. If you suspect rapid tire wear, have your rear axle alignment checked and adjusted by an authorized dealer.

In addition to pre-delivery inspections, suspension alignment should be checked when any one of the following conditions exist:

- Discovery of loose suspension fasteners. (Loose, defined as any torque below the recommended torque value.)
- Discovery of elongated holes in a suspension component.
- Bushing replacement.
- Excessive or abnormal tire wear.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

STEERING SYSTEM

Power Steering

Oil (under low pressure) provides the power to operate the steering gear. It also serves to lubricate moving parts and remove heat. A loss of steering efficiency will occur if too much heat builds up in the system.

WARNING!

Do not operate the vehicle if the steering system is not working properly. You could lose control of your vehicle if the steering system is not in good working condition, which could result in a serious accident. For driving safety, visually check the steering gear and components. Frequent checks are important for driving safety, especially after traveling over rough roads. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

If the steering feels unbalanced from side-to-side while turning, check for the following possible causes:

- unequal tire pressures
- vehicle overloaded or unevenly distributed load
- wheels out of alignment
- wheel bearings improperly adjusted

If you cannot correct the problem, check with an authorized dealer.

Your vehicle is equipped with integral power steering. The system includes an engine-driven fluid pump, a fluid reservoir, the steering gear, and connecting hoses. Because of the hydraulic power assist, little effort is required to turn the steering wheel. When no input is applied through the steering wheel, the steering gear will return to the neutral position. If, for any reason, the power assist system goes out, steering the vehicle is still possible, yet it will require much greater effort.

Visually check the following parts:

- Crosstube: Is it straight?

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Draglink tube clamp: Check for looseness or interference.
- Ball joints and steering U-joints: Check for looseness.
- Steering wheel for excessive free-play. Check the simplest probable causes first:
  a. unequal tire pressures
  b. loose cap nuts
  c. bent crosstube
  d. lack of lubrication
- If these checks do not reveal the problem, or if you correct them and still have a steering problem, take your truck to an authorized dealer for evaluation.

Fluid Level and Refill

Have the power steering fluid and filters changed at an authorized dealer.

CAUTION

When adding fluid, be sure to use fluid of the same type. While many fluids have the same description and intended purpose, they should not be mixed due to incompatible additives. Mixing incompatible fluids may lead to equipment damage.

- Check and completely change the fluid level according to Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12. Use the following procedure:

NOTE

Before removing reservoir cover, wipe outside of cover so that no dirt can fall into the reservoir.

- Maximum/Minimum level is indicated on the reservoir. These same levels are also indicated by two lines on the dipstick in the reservoir.
- There are two ways to check whether the power steering fluid is at its proper level. Both checks are with the engine NOT running.

1. If you check the fluid with the engine and steering system COLD, the fluid level should be at/or above the Minimum indicator level and should generally not exceed the middle point between Maximum and Minimum level indicators.
2. If you check the fluid with the engine and steering system WARM, the fluid should NOT exceed the Maximum level indicator and should generally not drop below the middle point

https://truckmanualshub.com/

between the Maximum and Minimum level indicators.

Fluid Filter Replacement

CAUTION
Servicing the power steering system without bleeding it of trapped air may cause damage to the power steering pump.

1. Replace both fluid and filter as per the chart below.
2. Bleed the system if necessary.

Steering Shaft

The following are common torque specifications for most steering shafts.

- Torque on U–joint pinch bolt and nut (7/16 in) 74–81 Nm (55 to 60 lb-ft), lubricated.
- Torque on Pitman arm clamp bolt and nut (3/4 in): 406–433 Nm (300 to 320 lb-ft), lubricated.
- For off–highway vehicles, tighten the U–bolts after the first day or two of operation. Then check weekly.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

If this chassis is equipped with an electronic stability system (ESC) and any part of the steering system (e.g. linkage, steering driveline, column, front-end alignment, etc) is repaired, removed, or disassembled in any way, or if the steering angle sensor is replaced, the steering angle sensor must be recalibrated. Any repairs or adjustments to any part of the steering system must be performed by an authorized dealer. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

DRIVELINE

Driveshaft Maintenance

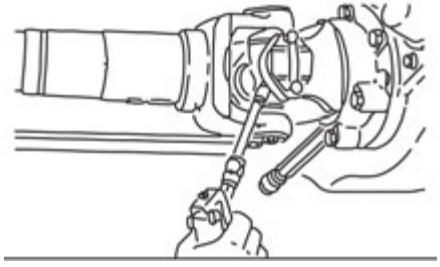
The slip joints and universal joints of the driveshaft should be lubricated periodically.

Use a good quality lithium-soap-base or equivalent extreme pressure (E.P.) grease: NLGI Grade 2.

Dana SPL U-joints and driveshafts should be inspected every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance (Refer to Spicer Driveshaft service manual DSSM-0100 (3264-SPL) for detailed instructions).

Use only Spicer Driveshaft approved lubricants when greasing Spicer SPL U-joints.

U-Joints



The slip joints and universal joints of the drive shaft should be lubricated according to Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12.

Use a good quality lithium-soap-base or equivalent extreme pressure (E.P.) grease: NLGI Grade 2.

Use only Spicer Driveshaft approved lubricants when greasing Spicer SPL U-joints.

For SPL170XL and SPL250XL, the U-joint lube interval changes after the initial lube at 350,000 miles. After the first lube interval, the U-joint needs lubrication every 150,000 miles. Inspection of the U-joints is the same regardless of when the U-joint grease interval happens.

⚠ WARNING!

Improper lubrication of U-joints can cause them to fail prematurely. The driveshaft could separate from the vehicle and result in an accident. Make sure lubricant is purged at all four ends of each U-joint and loosen caps if necessary. Also, regularly inspect U-joints for excessive wear or movement, and repair or replace as necessary. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

TIRES AND WHEEL

Tires

WARNING!

Do not repair damaged tires unless you are fully qualified and equipped to do so. Wheel and tire assemblies cannot be worked on without proper tools and equipment, such as: safety cages or restraining devices. Have all tire repairs performed by an expert. Stand away from the tire assembly while the expert is working. Failure to do this may result in death or injury.

Your tires are a very important part of your vehicle's whole braking system. How fast you can stop depends in large measure on how much friction you get between the road and your tires. In addition, keeping your tires in good condition is essential to the safe, efficient operation of your vehicle.

Regular, frequent inspection and the right care will give you the assurance of safe and reliable tire operation. Here are some tips on maintaining your tires.

Checking Inflation Pressure

Give your tires a visual test every day, and check inflation **with a gauge** every week:

- When checking tire pressure, inspect each tire for damage to sidewalls, cuts, cracks, uneven wear, rocks between duals, etc. If a tire appears underinflated, check for damage to the wheel assembly. Don't forget to check between dual wheels. If you find wheel damage, have an expert tire service repair it.
- Maximum tire pressure will be indicated on the sidewall of a tire.
- Check pressure only when the tires are cool. Warm or hot tires cause pressure buildup and will give you an inaccurate reading. So never deflate a warm tire to the specified pressure.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Underinflated Tires

Low pressure is a tire's worst enemy. Underinflation allows tires to flex improperly, causing high temperatures to build up. Heat causes early tire damage such as flex break, radial cracks, and ply separation. Low pressure may affect control of your vehicle, especially at the front wheels. Most tire wear problems are caused by underinflation as the result of slow leaks, so you'll want to check tire pressure regularly. Lower tire pressure does not provide better traction on ice or snow.

WARNING!

Do not operate a vehicle with underinflated tires. The extra heat caused by underinflation can cause sudden tire failure such as a tire fire or blow out which can cause an accident resulting in death or personal injury. Low pressure may affect control at the front wheels, which could result in an accident involving death or personal injury. Keep your tires inflated to the manufacturer's recommended air pressure.

WARNING!

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle to remove or install a damaged tire and wheel assembly if you are not fully qualified and not equipped with the proper tools and equipment. Do not attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been run flat. Obtain expert help. A person can be seriously injured or killed if using the wrong service methods. Truck tires and wheels should be serviced only by trained personnel using proper equipment. Follow OSHA regulations per section 1910.177.

NOTE

Follow all warnings and cautions contained within the tire and wheel manufacturers literature.

1

TREAD CONTACT WITH ROAD

Proper-Inflation: the correct profile for full contact with the road.

2

TREAD CONTACT WITH ROAD

Under-Inflation: causes abnormal tire deflection, which builds up excessive heat, running the risk of failure. It also causes irregular wear.

3

TREAD CONTACT WITH ROAD

Over-Inflation: reduces the tread contact area with the road surface, concentrating all of the vehicle weight on the center of the tread. This causes premature wear of the tire.

Overloaded Tires

Overloading your truck is as damaging to your tires as underinflation. The following chart shows how neglect or deliberate abuse can affect the life of your tires.

EFFECT OF LOAD PRESSURE ON TIRE LIFE						
Vehicle Load	Normal	20% Over	40% Over	60% Over	80% Over	100% Over
Tire Pressure	Normal	20% Low	30% Low	35% Low	45% Low	55% Low
Expected Total Tire Mileage	Normal	70%	50%	40%	30%	25%

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Overinflated Tires

Too much air pressure reduces the tire tread contact area and results in rapid wear in the center of the tread.

WARNING!

Overinflated tires can cause accidents. They wear more quickly than properly inflated tires and are more subject to punctures, cracks, and other damage. They could fail and cause you to lose control of your vehicle resulting in an accident causing death or personal injury. Be sure all tires are inflated correctly according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Matching Tires

Be sure to buy matched tires for your vehicle, especially on the rear axles. Mismatched tires can cause stress between axles and cause the temperature of your axle lubricant to get too hot. Matched tires will help your driveline last longer and will give you better tire mileage.

WARNING!

Do not mismatch tires, it can be dangerous. Never mix tires of different design such as steel belted radials and bias ply tires, etc. Mixing tire types and sizes will adversely affect the road-holding ability of both types of tires and can lead to loss of vehicle control and causing death or personal injury.

WARNING!

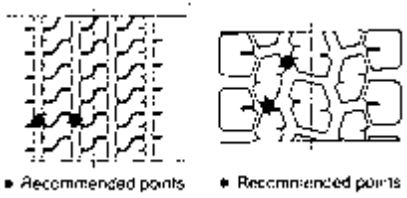
Do not install regrooved or reinforcement-repaired tires on steering axles. They could fail unexpectedly and cause you to lose control of your vehicle resulting in an accident causing death or personal injury.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Replacing Tires

Front: Replace front tires when less than 4/32 in. of tread remains. Check at three places equally spaced around the tire.

Drive Axles or Trailers: Replace tires on drive axles or trailers when less than 2/32 in. of tread depth remains in any major groove. Check at three places equally spaced around the tire. See the next illustration for recommended measuring points for tread depth.



Steer Tire Points (left), Drive Tire Points (right)

WARNING!

Do not replace original equipment tires with load ratings less than the original tires. Doing so could lead to unintentional overloading of the tire, which could cause a failure resulting in loss of vehicle control and an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

NOTE

To prolong your tires' life and make them safer, have their radial and lateral run-out checked at your dealer. And of course you should have your tires balanced anytime you change a tire.

Greenhouse Gas Certified Tires

Replacing a tire that is greenhouse gas certified.

NOTE

The tires installed on this vehicle at the factory as original equipment may be certified for Greenhouse Gas and Fuel Efficiency regulations. Replacement tires must be of equal or lower rolling resistance level (TRRL or C_{rr}). Consult with your tire supplier(s) for appropriate replacement tires.

Verify if your vehicle is equipped with Greenhouse Gas certified tires by checking the Vehicle Emission Control label on the driver's side door frame. If these tires were installed at the factory, Lower Rolling Resistance codes (LRR) identify which tires are certified.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Maintaining a greenhouse gas certified tire.

In order to limit the rolling resistance of the tires and optimize fuel economy, the maintenance procedures specified by the tire manufacture must be followed.

For warranty information, See Greenhouse Gas Tires on page 6-9.

Tire Chains

If you need tire chains, install them on both sides of each driving axle.

CAUTION

Chains on the tires of only one tandem axle can damage the driveline U-joints and the interaxle differential. Your repairs could be costly & time-consuming.

Speed Restricted Tires

WARNING!

This vehicle may be equipped with speed restricted tires. Check each tire's sidewall for maximum rated speed. The vehicle should not be operated at sustained speed in excess of maximum rated speed. Failure to comply with these speed restrictions could cause sudden tire failure which can result in death, personal injury or property damage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Wheel Mounting and Fastening

After the vehicle travels about 50 to 100 miles (80 to 160 km), wheel mountings seat in and will lose some initial torque. Check hub/wheel mountings after this initial period and retighten.

WARNING!

Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts; improper torque readings will result, which could cause improper wheel clamping and could lead to a wheel failure resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Wheel Cap Nut Torque

At the first scheduled lube interval, have all wheel cap nuts torqued to their specified value listed in Wheel Cap Nut Torque on page 5-149. After that, check wheel cap nuts at least once a week. Contact an authorized dealer for information on the proper installation procedure for the wheels on your truck. This is a job you may not be able to do yourself. You need the right torquing equipment to do it.

Wheel Cap Nut Torque

WHEEL & NUT CONFIGURATION	STUD SIZE	TORQUE FOR INNER & OUTER CAP NUTS & RIM CLAMP NUTS	
		Nm	Lb-Ft
Steel or Aluminum Disc-Type Wheel; Double Cap Nut Mounting; Standard 7/8 Radius Ball Seat	3/4-16	610-680	450-500
	1-1/8-16	610-680	450-500
Heavy-Duty Steel Disc-Type Wheel; Double Cap Nut Mounting; 1-3/16 Radius Ball Seat:	15/16-12	1,020-1,220	750-900
	1-1/8-16	1,020-1,220	750-900
	1-15/16-12	1,020-1,220	750-900

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WHEEL & NUT CONFIGURATION	STUD SIZE	TORQUE FOR INNER & OUTER CAP NUTS & RIM CLAMP NUTS	
		Nm	Lb-Ft
Hub-Piloted Disc-Type Wheel w/Two Piece Flanged Cap Nuts: Steel or Aluminum Wheel PHP-10; Budd Uni-Mount-10; WDH-8	M22-1.5	610-680	450-500
Stud Backnuts (when used)	3/4-16	240-270	175-200
	1-14	240-410	175-300
Cast Spoke Wheel Assembly		Rim Clamp Nut Torque	
	1/2" Dia.	110-120	80-90
	5/8" Dia.	220-250	160-185
	3/4" Dia.	305-335	225-245

Threads should be clean and dry. Do not lubricate wheel nuts or studs.

Proper Torque and Sequence

Proper wheel torque can best be obtained on level ground. Install lug nuts and finger-tighten in the numerical sequence as shown below, see Nut Tightening Sequence for Hub Piloted Disc Wheels on page 5-151 or Nut Tightening Sequence for Stud Piloted Disc Wheels on page 5-151. This procedure will ensure that the wheel is drawn evenly against the hub. Torque each nut to the torque value listed in Wheel Cap Nut Torque on page 5-149.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WARNING!

Tighten wheel cap nuts properly. If they are not tightened properly, wheel nuts could eventually cause the wheel to become loose, to fail, and/or to come off while the vehicle is moving, possibly causing loss of control and may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Nut Tightening Sequence for Hub Piloted Disc Wheels

Nut Tightening Sequence for Stud Piloted Disc Wheels

Wheel Replacement With Disc Brake Option

WARNING!

Use only the wheel brand, size and part number originally installed. Use of a different wheel brand or size could cause valve stem to interfere with a brake component which could lead to loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Vehicles equipped with front disc brakes are fitted with wheels designed specifically for disc brake applications. If it ever becomes necessary to replace an original equipment wheel, the replacement wheel must be the same brand and size as the take-off wheel. On vehicles equipped with 22.5 in. disc wheels, installing the wrong replacement wheel could result in the wheel valve stem making contact

https://truckmanualshub.com/

with the disc brake assembly. When installing any replacement wheel, always inspect the tires/wheels to ensure there is adequate clearance between other vehicle components.

With the hood open, check for clearance between the wheel and disc brake assembly. Use a hydraulic jack to raise the front of the vehicle off the ground to allow the wheel to spin freely. While rotating the wheel, check to ensure there is adequate clearance between the wheel and disc brake assembly

WARNING!

If the hood falls, anyone under it could be injured. Always make sure that the hood hold open device engages when the hood is in its open position any time anyone gets under the hood for any reason.

- The hood could hurt someone that is in the way of its descent. Before lowering the hood, be sure no objects or people are in the way.

WARNING!

Always support the vehicle with appropriate safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. A jack is not adequate for this purpose.

WARNING!

Improperly mounting and demounting tire and rim assemblies is dangerous. Failure to observe proper precautions could cause the tire-rim assembly to burst explosively, causing death or personal injury. See the wheel manufacturer's literature for the proper way to mount and demount your tires and rims. Follow their precautions exactly.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Disc Wheels

WARNING!

Use the correct components and tools when working on wheels. Grooves in the wheel disc or other damage to the disc can weaken the wheel and cause it to eventually come off. This could cause you to lose control of your vehicle, and may result in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

The end of the wheel wrench must be smooth. Burrs on the end of the wrench can tear grooves in the disc. These grooves may lead to cracks in the disc, and can cause it to fail.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

WHEEL BEARING

Wheel Bearing Adjustment

For safe, reliable operation and adequate service life, your wheel bearings must be adjusted properly at the recommended intervals. Contact your authorized dealer to make sure the wheel bearings are properly adjusted.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

TRANSMISSION AND CLUTCH

Introduction

Follow these steps to ensure parts are properly lubricated:

- Maintain oil level, check it regularly
- Change oil regularly
- Use the correct grade and type of oil
- Buy oil from a reputable dealer

All Transmissions

Oil Change: Drain and replace according to Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12 and the Transmission Service Manual. Use the recommended types of oil as specified in the Operation and Service Manual (included with vehicle). Select the appropriate lubricant for the expected ambient (outside air) temperatures.

Transmission Lubricants

CAUTION

When adding oil, types and brands of oil should not be intermixed because of possible incompatibility, which could decrease the effectiveness of the lubrication or cause component failure.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Manual Transmissions

Manual transmissions are designed so that the internal parts operate in a bath of oil circulated by the motion of gears and shafts.

Service Intervals

For recommended types and brands of all lubricants, see the transmission manufacturer's Service Manual

MODEL	RECOMMENDED LUBRICANT (See Note)	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE RANGE		VISCOSITY (SAE)
		DEG. C	DEG. F	
Eaton-Fuller	HD engine oil: API CE or CF-4.	Above -12	Above +10	50
	Synthetic oil: Chevron RPM Synthetic Transmission Fluid, or equal, meeting MIL-L-2104D and Eaton PS-081 specifications.	Above -40	Above -40	50

NOTE

Do not use multi-viscosity or EP (extreme pressure) gear oil (e.g., axle oils) in transmissions. Multi-viscosity or EP oils may damage components.

Standard Transmission Oil Level

NOTE

The vehicle must be parked on level ground.

Maintain the oil level and check it regularly. Oil should be up to bottom of filler plug hole.

Clutch System Introduction

Free pedal is the distance the clutch pedal moves by applying only slight pressure. During free pedal the release yoke in the transmission moves until its bearing pads contact the release bearing. This movement of the release yoke is called free travel. Thus, free pedal and free travel are directly related to each other.

As the clutch pedal is depressed further, with harder pressure, the release yoke moves the release bearing away from the engine. This causes the clutch plate to release from the driven disks in the clutch. This is

https://truckmanualshub.com/

called release travel. And finally, on 9-, 10-, and 11-speed transmissions, as the pedal is pushed to the last 1/2 to 1 inch of travel, the release bearing contacts and engages the clutch brake. This is called clutch brake squeeze. When the clutch wears, the release bearing gradually moves toward the engine, decreasing free pedal and free travel. When all free pedal and free travel are gone, the clutch requires adjustment.

The clutch is adjusted by turning an adjustment ring that is built into the clutch. When the ring is turned, the release bearing moves back toward the transmission, restoring free pedal and clutch free travel. Under normal clutch wear this is the only adjustment needed. Do not attempt to change any other component. See the Medium Duty Maintenance Manual for details.

Clutch Adjustment — Normal Wear

Clutch pedal free travel is usually 1 3/4 in. to 2 in. (34 to 51 mm). This should be your guide for determining whether your truck needs clutch adjustment. Also, if it becomes increasingly difficult to shift into gears, or the truck creeps with the clutch pedal depressed, your clutch needs adjustment. See the Medium Duty Maintenance Manual for the proper adjustment procedures.

Some vehicles have automatic clutch adjustment. If yours doesn't have this feature, adjustment will have to be done by a trained certified mechanic. Have the adjustment done before clutch pedal free travel is reduced to the minimum allowable 1/2 in. (13mm).

Clutch Linkage

The Medium Duty is equipped with a rod and lever mechanical clutch linkage. Lubricate each pivot point on the clutch linkage.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Automatic Transmissions

Service Intervals

Check daily with engine idling. See Preventive Maintenance Schedule on page 5-12 for service intervals.

Automatic Transmission Oil Level

NOTE
The vehicle must be parked on level ground.

See the Transmission Operator's Manual for information on checking the transmission oil level.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

CONSUMER INFORMATION AND VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

Vehicle Identification 6-3
General VIN Information 6-4
Component Identification. 6-7

CONSUMER INFORMATION

Federal Safety Standard Certification Label 6-8
How to Order Parts 6-8
NHTSA Consumer Information 6-8
Canadian Consumer Information 6-9
Warranty. 6-9

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

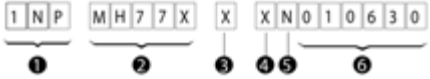
CONSUMER INFORMATION AND VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

Vehicle Identification

Each vehicle completed by Peterbilt Motors Company uses a Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) that contains the model year designation of your Peterbilt. The practice is in compliance with 49 CFR 565, Code of Federal Regulations.

The Vehicle Identification Number is on the Peterbilt labels on the left hand door post. The VIN contains 17 digits. The 10th digit is the code for the model year of your vehicle. The example VIN below shows how this code works:

Example VIN:



1	Manufacturer Identifier
2	Vehicle Attributes
3	Reserved Space
4	Model Year
5	Assembly Plant
6	Serial Number (Chassis Number)

Model Year

J = 2018

K = 2019

L = 2020

M = 2021

Glider Kit Identification

0 (zero) = Glider Kit

Plant Code

M = Ste Therese
D = Denton

6

https://truckmanualshub.com/

General VIN Information

VIN Locations

The full, 17-digit VIN is located on the Weight Rating Data Label. The label is located on the driver's side door edge or on the driver's side door frame.

Chassis Number

The Chassis Number refers to the last six characters of the VIN. This number will allow your dealer to identify your vehicle. You will be asked for this number when you bring it in for service.

Chassis Number Locations

- Right frame rail, top flange, about 3 ft. from the front end
- Cab back, left-hand rear panel, lower edge
- Tire, Rim, and Weight Rating Data label (truck)
- Components and Weights label
- Noise Emission label
- Paint Identification label

Certification Labels

Your vehicle information and specifications are documented on labels. As noted below, each label contains specific information pertaining to vehicle capacities and specifications that you should be aware of.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Components and Weights Label

The Components and Chassis Weight Label is located on either the driver's side door edge or on the driver's side door frame. It includes chassis number, chassis weight and gross weight, plus model information for the vehicle, engine, transmission, and axles.

Tire and Rim Data Label

The Tire, Rim and Weight Rating Data Label is located on the driver's side door edge or on the driver's side door frame. It contains the following information:

- GVWR - Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
- GAWR FRONT, INTERMEDIATE and REAR - Gross Axle Weight Ratings for Front, Intermediate and Rear Axle
- TIRE/RIM SIZES AND INFLATION PRESSURES - Tire/Rim Sizes and Cold Pressure Minimums
- VIN including CHASSIS NUMBER

WARNING!

Do not exceed the specified load rating. Overloading can result in loss of vehicle control and personal injury, either by causing component failures or by affecting vehicle handling. Exceeding load ratings can also shorten the service life of the vehicle.

The components of your vehicle are designed to provide satisfactory service if the vehicle is not loaded in excess of either the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR), or the maximum front and rear gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs).

NOTE

GVW is the TOTAL SCALE WEIGHT the vehicle is designed to carry. This includes the weight of the empty vehicle, loading platform, occupants, fuel, and any load.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Noise Emission Label

The Noise Emission Label is located in the driver's side door frame. It contains information regarding U.S. noise emission regulations, chassis number, and date of manufacture.

Paint Identification Label

The Paint Identification Label contains the paint colors used by the factory to paint your vehicle. It lists frame, wheels, cab interior and exterior colors. This label is located inside the glove box.

Federal Safety Standard Certification Label

The NHTSA regulations require a label certifying compliance with Federal Safety Standards, for United States and U.S. Territories, be affixed to each motor vehicle and prescribe where such label may be located. This certification label, which indicates the date of manufacture and other pertinent information, is located on the driver’s side door edge or on the driver’s side door frame.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Component Identification

Each of the major components on your vehicle has an identification label or tag. For easy reference, record component numbers such as, model, serial, and assembly number.

Engine: For further information, please refer to the Engine Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Transmission: For both manual and automatic transmissions, the identification number is stamped on a tag affixed to the right rear side of the transmission case.

Clutch: Enclosed in clutch housing. Location depends on manufacturer.

Steer Axle: The front axle serial number is stamped on a plate located on the center of the axle beam.

Drive Axles: The drive axle numbering system includes three labels or stamps:

1. Axle Specification Number, usually stamped on the right rear side of the axle housing. This number identifies the complete axle.
2. Axle Housing Number Tag, usually located on the left forward side of the housing arm. This tag identifies the axle housing.
3. Axle Differential Carrier Identification, usually located on the top side of the differential carrier. The following information is either stamped, or marked with a metal tag: Model No., Production Assembly No., Serial No., Gear Ratio, and Part Number.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

CONSUMER INFORMATION

Federal Safety Standard Certification Label

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration regulations require a label certifying compliance with Federal Safety Standards, for United States and U.S. Territories, be affixed to each motor vehicle and prescribe where such label may be located. This certification label, which indicates the date of manufacture and other pertinent information, is located on the left hand cab door post.

How to Order Parts

Replacement parts may be obtained from an authorized dealership.

When you order, it is IMPORTANT that you have the following information ready:

- Your name and address.
- Serial number of the truck.
- The name of the part you need.
- The name and number of the component for which the part is required.
- The quantity of parts you need.
- How you want your order shipped.

NHTSA Consumer Information

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause death or personal injury, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the vehicle manufacturer.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot get involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, and vehicle manufacturer.

Contacting NHTSA is possible through telephone, written mail and email. NHTSA also has a website where you can input your comments directly to them on the web. Please use any of the four ways to contact NHTSA:

https://truckmanualshub.com/

	Toll Free 888-327-4236 (800-4249153 TTY) 8:00 am to 10:00 pm ET Monday-Friday
	Office of Defects Investigations/CRD NVS-216 1200 New Jersey Ave SE. Washington, D.C. 20590
www	www.safercar.gov
@	nhtsa.webmaster@dot.gov

Canadian Consumer Information

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll free hotline 1-800-333-0510, or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada, ASFAD
Place de Ville Tower C
330 Sparks Street
Ottawa ON K1A 0N5

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/menu.htm

Warranty

Greenhouse Gas Tires

The following warranty is for vehicles equipped with Greenhouse Gas certified tires:

VEHICLE EMISSIONS LIMITED EXPRESS WARRANTY RELATED TO ORIGINAL EQUIPMENT TIRES

PACCAR Inc warrants the tires installed as original equipment on this vehicle only against defects in materials and workmanship which cause the vehicle to fail to comply with applicable U.S. and Canadian greenhouse gas emission limits ("Warrantable Emissions Failures"). This vehicle emissions limited express warranty relating to original equipment tires is valid for two (2) years or 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

YOUR SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY AGAINST PACCAR Inc IS LIMITED TO THE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF ORIGINAL EQUIPMENT TIRES AT AUTHORIZED UNITED STATES AND CANADIAN PACCAR DEALERS, SUBJECT TO PACCAR'S TIME AND MILEAGE LIMITATIONS LISTED ABOVE. This Vehicle Emissions Limited Express Warranty relating to original equipment tires begins on the date of delivery of the vehicle to the first purchaser or lessee and accrued time and mileage is calculated when the vehicle is brought into an authorized dealer for correction of the Warrantable Emissions Failures relating to the original equipment tires.

PACCAR MAKES NO OTHER VEHICLE EMISSIONS WARRANTIES RELATING TO THE ORIGINAL EQUIPMENT TIRES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. WHERE PERMITTED BY LAW, PACCAR EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE RELATING TO VEHICLE EMISSIONS. IT IS AGREED THAT PACCAR SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO: LOSS OF INCOME OR LOST PROFITS; VEHICLE DOWNTIME; COMMUNICATION EXPENSES; LODGING AND/OR MEAL EXPENSES; FINES; APPLICABLE TAXES OR BUSINESS COSTS OR LOSSES; ATTORNEY'S FEES; AND ANY LIABILITY YOU MAY HAVE IN RESPECT TO ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY RELATING TO WARRANTABLE EMISSIONS FAILURES.

This Vehicle Emissions Limited Express Warranty relating to original equipment tires is limited to emissions compliance only.

The tires are separately warranted by their manufacturer for defects in materials and workmanship other than those which cause non-compliance with U.S. and Canadian GHG regulations, subject to limitations and conditions contained within the tire manufacturer's warranty agreement. You are responsible for the safe operation and maintenance of the vehicle and its tires. PACCAR does not warrant wear and tear of the tires.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Index

5th wheel
maintenance 5-111

A

Accessories
glove compartment..... 3-70
navigation system 3-69
radio 3-70
vehicle telematic system..... 3-71
Accessory drive belts.....5-102
Adding electrical options 5-90
Additional sources of information...1-9
California proposition 65 warning 1-7
data recorder 1-7
installed equipment - operator's manuals.....1-9
other sources 1-10
Adjustable auxiliary axles 4-50
liftable/non-steerable pusher calibration..... 4-53
liftable/steerable calibration 4-53
tag axle calibration 4-53
After-treatment system
introduction 4-61
Air cleaners.....5-105
Air compressor 5-61
Air disc brakes
maintenance 5-64
Air dryer..... 5-57
Air dryer (Bendix® AD-IS series). 5-58
Air dryer overhaul 5-58
Air filter replacement.....5-106
Air intake system.....5-104
Air pressure gauge (primary / secondary) 3-37
Air suspension deflate switch..... 3-50
Air system
air cleaners 5-105
air compressor..... 5-61
air dryer 5-57
air filter replacement 5-106
air gauges and air leaks 5-60
air intake system 5-104
draining air tanks 5-59
primary air pressure gauge..... 5-60
secondary air pressure gauge . 5-60
turbocharger 5-105
Air system maintenance..... 5-54
Air tanks 5-59
Allison transmission lubrication... 5-47
Anti-lock brakes
trailer ABS 4-26
trailer ABS (without PLC)..... 4-27
wheel spin control 4-32
Anti-lock brakes (ABS)
electronic stability control (ESC)..... 4-28
roll stability program (RSP)..... 4-28
Audible alarm.....3-9
Automatic and automated transmissions 4-22
Automatic Slack Adjusters 5-66
Automatic transmissions

7

https://truckmanualshub.com/

oil level 5-158
service intervals 5-158
Auxiliary axles 4-50
Auxiliary transmission 4-23
Axle creep rating 4-52
Axle lubrication 5-114

B

Batteries
battery access 5-91
battery care 5-95
battery charging 5-95
jump starting vehicles 2-8
removing and installing batteries 5-93
Battery access 5-91
Battery care 5-95
Battery charging 5-95
Belt damage and repair 1-27
Bendix® AD-IS series air dryer ... 5-58
Brake adjustment 5-63
Brake system
adjustment 5-63
hydraulic brakes 4-35
retarders 4-41
roll stability program (RSP) 4-28
spring brakes 2-20
yaw control 4-29
Brake warning lamp 4-37
Bulb replacement
headlight 5-86
Bulb specifications 5-87

C

Cab and frame access 1-11
Cabin fresh air filter 5-120
California Proposition 65 Warning .. 1-7
Canadian consumer information 6-9
Certification labels
components and weights label ... 6-5
federal safety standard certification label 6-6
noise emission label 6-6
paint identification label 6-6
tire and rim data label 6-5
Checking tire inflation pressure .. 5-143
Chrome and aluminum surfaces .. 5-71
Cleaning vinyl and upholstery 5-75
Cleaning, protecting and weather stripping 5-72
Climbing onto the deck plate 1-14
Clutch
clutch brake 4-19
clutch travel 4-19
double clutching 4-21
identification 6-7
riding the clutch 4-23
Clutch brake 4-20
Clutch maintenance 5-156
Clutch travel 4-20
Coasting 4-62
Component identification reference 6-7
Components and weights label 6-5
Consumer information
Federal safety standards 6-8
how to order parts 6-8
Controls
air suspension deflate switch ... 3-50
cruise control switch 3-51
daytime running lights 3-48
dome light 3-49
fifth wheel lock switch 3-57
fog lights switch 3-50
hazard flasher 3-47
horn 3-46
ID and clearance lights switch . 3-49

https://truckmanualshub.com/

ignition switch..... 3-47
interaxle differential lock switch 3-56
mirror heat switch 3-54
panel light dimmer..... 3-49
parking brake valve 3-57
power door lock switch..... 3-55
power engine brake switch 3-55
power mirror switch 3-53
power port..... 3-60
power window switch 3-54
regeneration switch 3-52
shift pattern display 3-61
two-speed rear axle switch 3-56
Coolant Level..... 5-82
Cooling system
adding coolant..... 5-82
fan 5-103
fan clutch.....5-103
maintenance 5-80
Cooling system maintenance 5-80
Cruise control switch 3-51
Cupholders 3-60

D

Daily checks..... 1-33
Dash- and door-mounted controls
air suspension deflate switch... 3-50
cruise control switch 3-51
daytime running lights..... 3-48
dome light..... 3-49
engine brake switch..... 3-55
fifth wheel lock switch..... 3-57
fog lights switch 3-50
hazard flasher 3-47
ID and clearance lights switch . 3-49
ignition switch..... 3-47
interaxle differential lock switch 3-56
mirror heat switch 3-54
panel light dimmer..... 3-49
parking brake valve 3-57
power door lock switch..... 3-55
power mirror switch 3-53
power port..... 3-60
power window switch 3-54
regeneration switch 3-52
shift pattern display 3-61
two-speed rear axle switch 3-56
Data recorder.....1-7
Daytime running lights..... 3-48
Deck plate access 1-14
Deep snow and mud switch..... 4-33
DEF filter.....5-126
Descending a grade 4-63
Diesel exhaust fluid gauge..... 3-37
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank 5-126
Differential lock..... 4-47
Disc wheels.....5-153
Dome light 3-49
Door lock 1-12
key fob synchronization..... 1-14
remote keyless entry (RKE)
system 1-13
Double clutching 4-21
Drive axles
identification 6-7
Driver controlled main differential 2-15
Driver information display
diagnostic display 3-28
ignition timer 3-27
RPM detail 3-26
settings menu..... 3-29
transmission display 3-29
trip information..... 3-27
truck information..... 3-28
Driver's
daily checks..... 1-33
weekly checks 1-35

7

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Driver's Check List 1-32
Driver's seat adjustment
with air suspension 1-20
with standard seat 1-20
Driveshaft Maintenance 5-142
Driving tips
coasting 4-62
descending a grade 4-63
engine RPM..... 4-63
fuel economy 4-64
using the tachometer..... 4-64
Driving with deflated air springs .. 4-60
Drum brakes
maintenance 5-66
Dual range (two-speed) rear axle 4-48

E

Eaton/Dana axle lubrication..... 5-50
ELC concentration 5-80
Electrical and alternator
precautions..... 5-98
Electrical system
adding electrical options 5-90
batteries 5-91
battery care 5-95
battery charging 5-95
electrical and alternator
precautions 5-98
fuses, circuit breakers and
relays..... 5-87
jump starting vehicles.....2-8
removing and installing
batteries..... 5-93
Electrical system maintenance ... 5-85
Electronic stability control (ESC) . 4-28
Emergency
battery connections 2-10
emergency equipment kit..... 1-31
jump starting vehicles.....2-8
Emergency equipment 1-31
Emergency welding.....5-110
Engine
air cleaners 5-105
air intake system 5-104
drive belts 5-102
engine mounting.....5-107
exhaust system.....5-107
identification 6-7
lubrication 5-100
pipe and hose clamp torque
values 5-40, 5-101
Engine (block) heater..... 5-84
Engine block heater 4-6
Engine brake switch 3-55
Engine control display 4-13
Engine cool down..... 4-67
Engine fan 5-103
Engine fan control 4-11
Engine hours 3-33
Engine is overheating 2-5
Engine lubrication.....5-100
Engine maintenance..... 5-99
Engine Mounting.....5-107
Engine oil pressure gauge 3-34
Engine oil pressure lamp turns on..2-4
Engine operation
engine block heater 4-6
engine control display..... 4-13
engine cool down..... 4-67
engine fan control 4-11
winterfronts 4-12
Engine overspeed 4-63
Engine warm-up.....4-7
Environmental protection.....1-8
Exhaust system 5-107
Extended life coolant (ELC)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

What To Check In An ELC-filled Cooling System 5-80
Exterior maintenance 5-71
Exterior washing 5-74

F

Federal safety standard certification label 6-6
Fifth wheel maintenance 5-111
Fifth wheel lock switch 3-57
Final stopping procedures 4-69
Fog lights switch 3-50
Forward drive axle temperature gauge 3-39
Frame fastener torque requirements 5-112
Front axle and suspension maintenance 5-114
Fuel economy 4-64
Fuel filters 5-109
Fuel gauge 3-36
Fuel shut-off valve 4-68
Fuel shut-off valves 5-109
Fuel specification 4-67
Fuel system
fuel filters 5-109
shut-off valves 5-109
Fuller transmission lubrication 5-45
Fuse inspection and replacement 5-90
Fuse or relay blows 2-6
Fuses, circuit breakers and relays 5-87

G

Gauges
primary air pressure 5-60
secondary air pressure 5-60
Gauges (optional)
forward drive axle temperature. 3-39
rear drive axle temperature 3-40
Gauges (standard)
air pressure 3-37
diesel exhaust fluid 3-37
engine hours / outside air temperature 3-33
engine oil pressure 3-34
fuel 3-36
odometer / trip meter 3-32
speedometer 3-31
tachometer 3-32, 4-64
water temperature 3-35
GAWR - Gross Axle Weight Rating 1-31
GCW - Gross Combination Weight 1-31
General VIN information 6-4
Glove compartment 3-70
Greenhouse gas certified tires ... 5-147
Greenhouse Gas Tires warranty 6-9
GVWR - Gross Vehicle Weight Rating 1-31

H

Hazard flasher 3-47
Headlight aiming 5-87
Headlight replacement 5-86
Heater and air conditioner 5-118
air conditioner 5-121
heater 5-120
Heater and air conditioner maintenance 5-118
Heating and air conditioning
air flow control dial 3-65
cooling 3-66

https://truckmanualshub.com/

defrost vents 3-65
dehumidify 3-67
fan control dial 3-65
floor and defrost vents 3-65
floor vents 3-65
fresh air/recirculation switch 3-66
heating 3-67
instrument panel and de-mister vents 3-65
instrument panel, de-mister and floor vents 3-65
temperature control dial 3-65
what each control does 3-65
windshield defog and defrost ... 3-67
Heating and Air Conditioning cab controls 3-62
Hill hold 4-22
Hood hold downs 1-16
Hood safety cable 1-18
Hood tilting 1-17
hood hold downs 1-16
hood safety cable 1-18
Horn 3-46
How to order parts 6-8
How to use this manual 1-3
Hydraulic brake system 5-67
brake fluid check and refill 5-68
parking brake component inspection 5-70
service brake component inspection 5-69
Hydraulic brakes 4-35
ABS warning Lamp 4-39
brake components 4-36
brake warning lamp 4-37
parking brake burnishing 4-40
wet or overheated brakes 4-38

I

ID and clearance lights switch 3-49
Idling the engine 4-9
In-cab battery box 5-92
Indicator symbols 3-11
Inspection of the engine oil level 5-100
Installed Equipment - Operator's Manuals 1-9
Instrument panel 3-5
Instrument system self test 3-10
Instrumentation
air pressure gauge 3-37
audible alarm 3-9
diesel exhaust fluid gauge 3-37
engine hours / outside air temperature 3-33
engine oil pressure gauge 3-34
forward drive axle temperature gauge 3-39
fuel gauge 3-36
indicator symbols 3-11
instrument panel 3-5
menu control switch 3-8
odometer / trip meter 3-32
rear drive axle temperature gauge 3-40
speedometer 3-31
system self test 3-10
tachometer 3-32
warning Lights 3-9
warning symbols description ... 3-19
water temperature gauge 3-35
Interaxle differential lock switch .. 3-56

J

Jump starting vehicles 2-8

https://truckmanualshub.com/

K

Key fob operation 1-13
Key fob synchronization 1-14
Keys
remote keyless entry (RKE) 1-12
Kingpin lubrication 5-114
Komfort-Latch® Feature 1-25

L

Lap/shoulder belt 1-22
Load distribution 1-31
Low air alarm turns On 2-3
Low voltage disconnect (LVD) 5-85
Lubricant specifications 5-38
Lubrication..... 5-41

M

Maintenance
5th wheel..... 5-111
air cleaners 5-105
air conditioner.....5-121
air intake system 5-104
air system 5-54
Allison transmission lubrication 5-47
brake adjustment 5-63
brake inspection 5-64
chrome and aluminum surfaces 5-71
cleaning vinyl and upholstery .. 5-75
clutch 5-156
cooling system..... 5-80
driver's check list 1-32
Eaton/Dana axle lubrication 5-50
electrical system..... 5-85
emergency welding 5-110
engine 5-99
exterior 5-71
frame fastener torque
requirements 5-112
frame fastener torque table.... 5-112
front axle and suspension
lubrication.....5-114
fuel system.....5-109
Fuller transmission lubrication . 5-45
heater 5-120
inspection 5-115
lubricant specifications..... 5-38
maintenance schedule..... 5-12
Meritor axle lubrication..... 5-49
noise and emission control
standards 5-122
oil changes..... 5-48
painted surfaces..... 5-71
preventive maintenance 5-9
rear axle alignment.....5-137
rear axle and suspension.....5-132
rear axle lubrication 5-135
rear suspension fasteners torque
table 5-134
rear suspension U-bolt torque
table 5-135
safety restraint system -
inspection 5-75
safety restraint system - inspection
guidelines 5-77
sliding fifth wheel 5-113
Spicer transmission lubrication. 5-47
stainless steel..... 5-72
steering and driveline 5-138
steering gear lubrication 5-52
tail pipe surface cleaning 5-72
tires 5-143
transmission 5-155
U-bolt torque.....5-116
U-bolt torque table 5-117
universal joint lubrication 5-52
vehicle cleaning 5-73

https://truckmanualshub.com/

washing chassis 5-75
washing exterior 5-74
wheel alignment 5-115
wheel bearing lubrication 5-51
windshield wiper/washer..... 5-79
Maintenance Procedures
inspection of the engine oil level 5-100
topping up the engine oil 5-101
Maintenance schedule 5-9
Manual transmission..... 4-14
clutch brake..... 4-20
clutch travel 4-20
double clutching 4-21
release bearing wear..... 4-23
riding the clutch..... 4-23
shifting gears 4-20
Master lubrication index 5-41
Matching tires 5-146
Menu control switch 3-8
Meritor axle lubrication 5-49
Mirror heat switch 3-54

N

Navigation system 3-69
NHTSA consumer information 6-8
Noise and emission control maintenance 5-122
Noise control inspections 5-124
air intake system 5-124
diesel particulate filters 5-126
engine fan and shroud 5-128
engine mounted noise insulators..... 5-124
exhaust system..... 5-125
exhaust tail pipe 5-128
hood insulation blanket 5-128
inner fender shields and cab skirt 5-129
joints and clamps..... 5-125
maintenance log..... 5-129
piping 5-126
Noise emission label..... 6-6

O

Odometer 3-32
Off-road ABS function switch 4-33
Oil changes..... 5-48
Operating procedure
automatic and automated transmissions..... 4-22
refueling 4-68
setting ride height 4-57
stopping procedures 4-69
transmission retarder 4-42
Outside air temperature 3-33
Overinflated tires..... 5-146
Overloaded tires 5-145

P

Paint identification label 6-6
Painted surfaces 5-71
Painting 5-111
Panel light dimmer 3-49
Parking brake 4-43
Parking brake valve..... 3-57
Pipe and hose clamp torque values..... 5-40, 5-101
Power door lock switch 3-55
Power line communication (PLC). 4-26
Power mirror switch..... 3-53
Power Port..... 3-60
Power window switch..... 3-54

https://truckmanualshub.com/

R

Radio 3-70
Rear axle - dual range (two-speed) 4-48
Rear axle alignment 5-137
Rear axle and suspension maintenance 5-132
  rear suspension fasteners 5-134
  visual inspection 5-133
Rear axle lubrication 5-135
Rear drive axle temperature gauge 3-40
Rear suspension fasteners 5-134
Rear suspension fasteners torque table 5-134
Rear suspension U-bolt torque table 5-135
Recovery hitch capacities 2-18
Recovery hitch connection 2-14
Recovery hitch installation 2-15
Recovery procedure 2-13
Recovery rigging 2-19
Refilling your radiator 5-83
Refueling 4-67
  fuel specification 4-68
Regeneration switch 3-52
Release bearing wear 4-23
Remote keyless entry (RKE) 1-13
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) 5-98
  batteries 1-14
  key fob operation 1-13
  key fob synchronization 1-14
removing and installing batteries . 5-93
Replacing tires 5-147
Returning vehicle to service 2-20
Riding the clutch 4-23
Roll stability program (RSP) 4-28

S

Safe vehicle operation 1-29
Safety
  cab and frame access 1-11
  deck plate access 1-14
  deflated air springs 4-60
  driver's check list 1-32
  emergency equipment kit 1-31
  safe vehicle operation 1-29
  safety alerts 1-4
  setting ride height 4-57
  vehicle loading 1-30
  vehicle safety 1-6
Safety alerts 1-4
Safety restraint belts 1-21
  belt damage and repair 1-27
  during pregnancy 1-26
  inspection 5-75
  safety restraint tips 1-27
Safety restraint system inspection 5-75
Seat adjustment 1-20
  Driver's seat with air suspension 1-20
  standard driver's seat 1-20
Seat belts 1-20
  adjustments 1-20
  belt damage and repair 1-27
  during pregnancy 1-26
  Komfort-Latch feature 1-25
  lap/shoulder belt 1-22
  safety restraint tips 1-27
Seats
  adjustments 1-20
  Komfort-Latch feature 1-25
  tether belts 1-24
  To adjust an external tether belt 1-25
Seats and restraints 1-20
ServiSignal Mini Indicator 5-107

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Setting ride height 4-57
Shift pattern display..... 3-61
Shut-down
fuel specification..... 4-68
location of fuel shut-off valves.. 4-68
refueling..... 4-67
Sliding 5th wheel
maintenance.....5-113
Sliding Fifth wheel
maintenance.....5-113
Speed restricted tires.....5-148
Speedometer..... 3-31
Spicer transmission lubrication ... 5-47
Spring brakes—manual release .. 2-20
Stainless steel..... 5-72
Starting procedure
cold temperature 4-6
engine warm-up 4-7
normal temperature 4-5
Stationary PTO operation 4-11
Steer axle
identification 6-7
Steering and driveline
maintenance 5-138
fluid level and refill 5-139
Steering column
tilt/telescoping 3-41
trailer brake hand valve..... 3-46
turn signal/high beam switch ... 3-42
Steering column-mounted controls
horn..... 3-46
Steering gear lubrication 5-52
Steering system maintenance
steering shaft 5-140
Stop engine lamp turns on 2-4
Suspension lubrication 5-114
Switches
air conditioner switch..... 3-65
cruise control 4-44
dual range rear axle switch..... 4-48
engine fan switch..... 4-11
fresh air/recirculation switch.... 3-66
off-road ABS function switch
(option)..... 4-33
optional deep snow and mud
switch 4-33
trailer marker light interrupter
switch 3-42
turn signal/high beam switch ... 3-42
windshield wipers/washer 3-44

T

Tachometer..... 3-32
Tail pipe surface cleaning 5-72
Telematic system
care and operation 3-72
disclaimer 3-73
Tether belts 1-24
Tilt/telescoping steering column .. 3-41
Tire and rim data label.....6-5
Tire chains.....5-148
Tire Chains 2-23
Tires.....5-143
greenhouse gas certified tires.5-147
inflation check 5-143
replacement.....5-147
tire chains 5-148
Tires and wheels
wheel cap nut torque
sequence 5-150
wheel cap nut torque table 5-149
wheel mounting and fastening 5-149
Topping up the engine oil 5-101
Towing the vehicle 2-23
Trailer ABS 4-26
Trailer air supply valve 3-57
Trailer brake hand valve..... 3-46

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Transmission
identification 6-7
introduction 4-14
maintenance 5-155
shifting gears in a new vehicle . 4-20
transmission tips 4-23
Transmission maintenance 5-155
Transmission retarder 4-42
Transmissions
automatic and automated 4-22
auxiliary transmission 4-23
transmission retarder 4-42
Trip meter..... 3-32
Turbocharger 5-105
Turn signal/high beam switch..... 3-42
Two-speed rear axle switch 3-56

U

U-bolt torque 5-116
U-Joints 5-142
Underinflated tires 5-144
Universal joint lubrication..... 5-52
Using the tachometer..... 4-64

V

Vehicle cleaning..... 5-73
Vehicle identification
chassis number.....6-4
chassis number locations.....6-4
VIN number 6-3
VIN number locations 6-4
Vehicle loading 1-30
GAWR..... 1-31
GCW..... 1-31
GVWR..... 1-31
load distribution..... 1-31
Vehicle recovery
driver controlled main differential..... 2-15
recovery guidelines 2-12
recovery hitch capacities 2-18
recovery hitch connection 2-14
recovery hitch installation..... 2-15
recovery procedure 2-13
recovery rigging 2-19
returning vehicle to service..... 2-20
sand, mud, snow and ice 2-22
spring brakes 2-20
towing the vehicle 2-23
Vehicle safety 1-6
Vehicle telematic system 3-71
Vinyl and upholstery
cleaning 5-75

W

Warning light/indicator symbols .. 3-11
Warning lights 3-9
Warning symbols
description 3-19
Warning/informational screen..... 3-73
Warranty 6-9
greenhouse gas tires.....6-9
Washing chassis 5-75
Water temperature gauge..... 3-35
Weekly checks 1-35
Welding (emergency).....5-110
What to do if.....2-3
engine is overheating 2-5
engine oil pressure lamp turns on.....2-4
fuse or relay blows 2-6
low air alarm turns on 2-3
stop engine lamp turns on.....2-4
you need roadside assistance ...2-3
Wheel alignment 5-115

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Wheel bearing adjustment 5-154
Wheel bearing lubrication 5-51
Wheel cap nut torque.....5-149
Wheel mounting and fastening ..5-149
Wheel replacement with disc brake
option 5-151
Wheel spin control 4-32
Windshield wiper/washer..... 5-79
maintenance 5-79
Windshield wipers/washer 3-44
Winterfronts 4-12

Y

Yaw control 4-29
Yaw stability 4-29

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Y53-6060-1C1 03/17 Printed in U.S.A. Peterbilt Motors Company, A PACCAR Company, P.O. Box 90208, Denton, Texas 76202